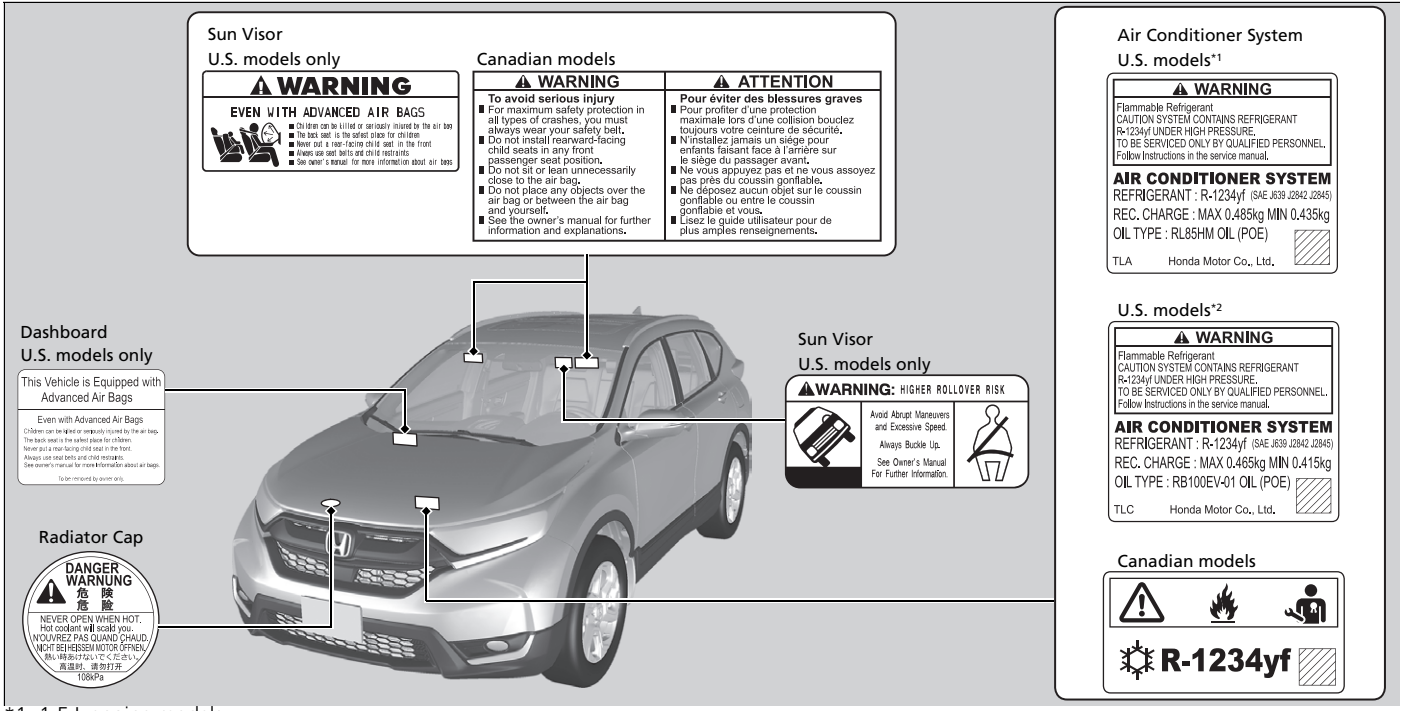
Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact a dealer for a replacement.



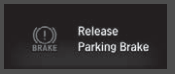
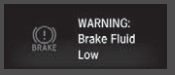
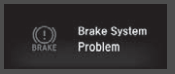
*1: 1.5 L engine models
*2: 2.4 L engine models

Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

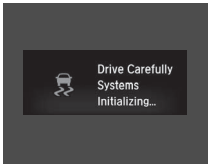
Indicators
Information Display Warning and Information Messages* 101
Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages* 102
Gauges and Displays
Gauges 116
Information Display* 117
Driver Information Interface* 120

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
U.S. BRAKE Canada  (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off if the parking brake has been released. • Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released. • Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. • Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. • The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released. • Comes on for about 15 seconds when you pull the electric parking brake switch while the ignition switch is in LOCK 0*1. • Stays on for about 15 seconds when you turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1 while the electric parking brake is set.	• **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level. ➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving** P. 636 • **Comes on along with the brake system indicator (amber)** - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. • **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks** P. 636 • **Blinks and the brake system indicator (amber) comes on at the same time** - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 637	  

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

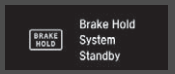
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
U.S. BRAKE SYSTEM Canada (Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system. • Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system or the automatic brake hold system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • **Comes on while driving** - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.	
		• Comes on if the parking brake and brake system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

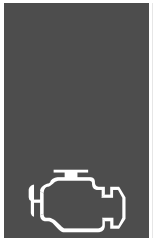
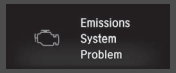
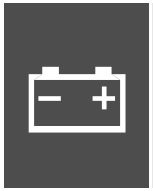
* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
U.S. BRAKE SYSTEM Canada  (Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	Models with CMBS • Comes on if there is a problem with the radar sensor. • Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 449 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.	➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 526	
U.S.  Canada 	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.	➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 526	—

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

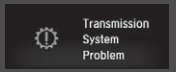
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.	• **Comes on while driving** - Immediately stop in a safe place. ➡ **If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On** P. 634	
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, and goes off when the engine starts, or after several seconds if the engine did not start. If "readiness codes" have not been set, it blinks five times before it goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control system. • Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.	• Readiness codes are part of the on board diagnostics for the emissions control systems. ➡ **Testing of Readiness Codes** P. 654 • **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • **Blinks while driving** - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take your vehicle to a dealer. ➡ **If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks** P. 635	
	Charging System Indicator	• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on when the battery is not charging.	• **Comes on while driving** - Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger in order to reduce electricity consumption. ➡ **If the Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 634	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

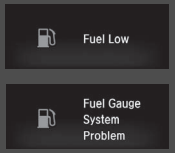
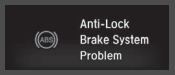
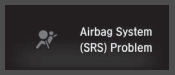
* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Shift Lever Position Indicator	• Indicates the current shift lever position.	➡ **Shifting** P. 467	
	Transmission System Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.	• **Blinks while driving** - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.	
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	• Comes on and the beeper sounds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1. • If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. • Blinks while driving if either you or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.	• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts. • **Stays on after you or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 42	 

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

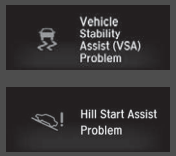
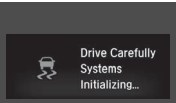
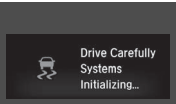
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Low Fuel Indicator	• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 2.1 U.S. gal/8.0 liter left). • Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.	• **Comes on** - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. • **Blinks** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. ➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 528	
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: - Supplemental restraint system - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system - Seat belt tensioner	• **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

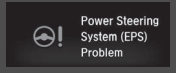
* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) System Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Blinks when VSA® is active. • Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA® system or hill start assist system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System** P. 507	
		• Comes on if the VSA® system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
	Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) **OFF** Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on when you partially disable VSA®.	➡ **VSA® On and Off** P. 508	
		• Comes on if the VSA® system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

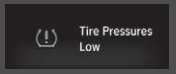
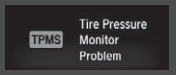
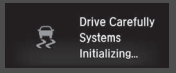
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Door Open Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds if you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if any door is not completely closed. • The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if any door is opened while driving.	• Goes off when all doors are closed.	—
	Tailgate Open Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds if you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if the tailgate is not completely closed. • The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if tailgate is opened while driving.	• Goes off when the tailgate is closed.	—
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.	• **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 638	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

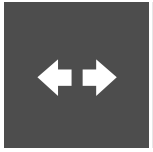
* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • May come on briefly if the ignition switch is turned to ON II*1 and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: - One or more tires' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been calibrated.	• **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tire pressures, and inflate the tire(s) if necessary. • **Stays on after the tires are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be calibrated. ➡ **TPMS Calibration** P. 516	
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS, or when a compact spare tire is temporarily installed.	• **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare, get your regular tire repaired or replaced, and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.	
		• Comes on if the TPMS is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

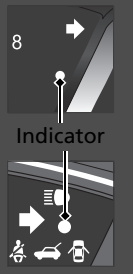
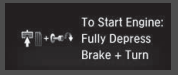
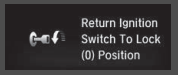
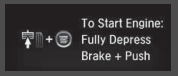
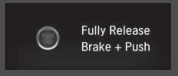
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	System Message Indicator*	• Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.	• While the indicator is on, press the (display/information) button to see the message again. • Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message. • The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is canceled, or the button is pressed.	—
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	• Blink when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blinks along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.	• **Does not blink or blinks rapidly** ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 588	—
	High Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.	—	—
	Auto High-beam System Indicator*	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the Auto high-beam system are met.	➡ **Auto High-Beam System*** P. 179	—
	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on when the light switch in a position other than OFF or when the switch is set to **AUTO*** and the exterior lights come on.	• If you remove the key from the ignition switch*1 while the exterior lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.	—

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

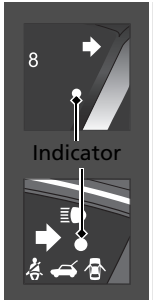
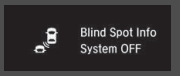
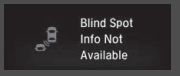
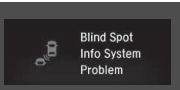
* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the fog lights are on.	—	—
	Immobilizer System Indicator	• Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information.	• **Blinks** - You cannot start the engine. Depress the brake pedal, then turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0 *1. Pull the key out*2, and then insert the key and turn it to ON II *1 again. • **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.	Models without smart entry system   Models with smart entry system  

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2:Canadian models only: Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the ignition on.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Security System Alarm Indicator	• Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	**Security System Alarm*** P. 159	—
	Blind spot information System Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Stays on while blind spot information system is turned off.	—	
		• Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of sensor.	• **Comes on while driving** - Remove the obstacle in the vicinity of sensor. **Blind spot information System*** P. 510	
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the system.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2:Canadian models only: Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the ignition on.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	ECON Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you press the **ECON** button.	➔ **ECON Button** P. 469	
	**CRUISE MAIN** Indicator*	• Comes on when you press the **CRUISE** button.	➔ **Cruise Control*** P. 473	—
	**CRUISE CONTROL** Indicator*	• Comes on if you have set a speed for cruise control.	➔ **Cruise Control*** P. 473	—
	Maintenance Minder Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on when the scheduled maintenance is due soon.	➔ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 557	—
	Transmission Temperature Indicator*	• Comes on when the transmission fluid temperature is too high.	• Stop in a safe place and move the shift position to P.	—
	Power Reduced Indicator*	• Comes on if there is a problem with the shutter grille, and the radiator coolant temperature is too high.	• Power output will be reduced, so you may not be able to accelerate or maintain your current speed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

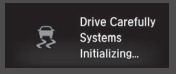
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Brake Depressing Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1, then goes off. **Electric Parking Brake System** • Blinks when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation.	• **Blinks while driving** - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed. ➡ **Parking Brake** P. 522	—
		Automatic Brake Hold System • Blinks when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation. • Blinks if the automatic brake hold is automatically canceled while it is in operation. The beeper sounds.	• **Blinks while driving** - Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed. ➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 526 • Immediately depress the brake pedal.	—
STARTER SYSTEM	Starter System Indicator*	• Comes on if the starter system has a problem.	• As a temporary measure, press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

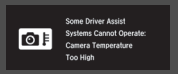
* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
AWD	All-wheel drive (**AWD**) Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the AWD system. • Blinks when the differential temperature is too high.	• **Stays on constantly** - The engine drives the front wheels only in this state. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—
			• **Blinks while driving** - Stop in a safe place, change to P, and idle the engine until the indicator goes off. If the indicator does not stop blinking, take your vehicle to a dealer. ➡ **Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™*** P. 515	—
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the RDM system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
		• Comes on if the RDM is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

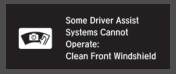
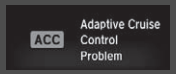
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

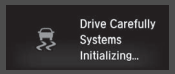
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator*	• Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off.	- Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel. - The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the radar sensor. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*** P. 530	
		• Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 477	

* Not available on all models

Continued

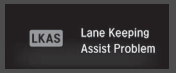
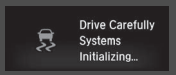
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator*	• Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 477	
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 449 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with LSF.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

* Not available on all models

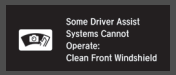
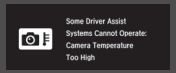
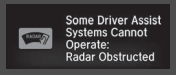
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on if the ACC with LSF is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. • ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 449 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Green)*	• Comes on when you press the **MAIN** button.	➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479	—

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Green)*	• Comes on when you press the **MAIN** button.	➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*** P. 499	—
	Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS™. A driver information interface message appears for five seconds. • Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS™.	• **Stays on constantly without the CMBS™ off** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*** P. 530	 
		• Comes on if the CMBS™ is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator*	• Comes on when the CMBS™ system shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 477 • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the camera. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*** P. 530	
			• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 477	
			• Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel. - The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you clean the sensor cover. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*** P. 530	

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator*	• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 449 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—

 * Not available on all models

Information Display Warning and Information Messages*

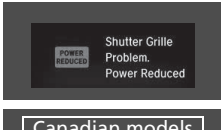
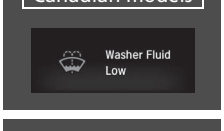
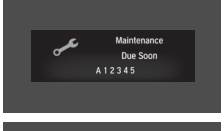
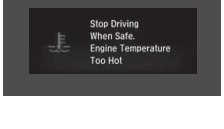
The following messages appear only on the information display.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

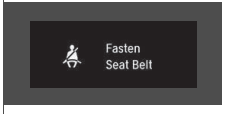
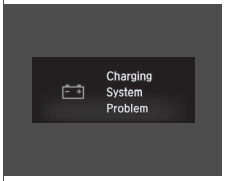
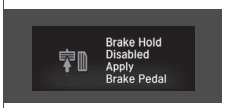
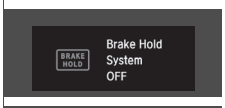
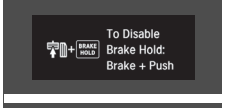
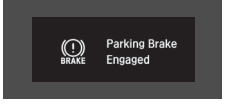
* Not available on all models

Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages*

The following messages appear only on the driver information interface. Press the (display/information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

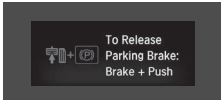
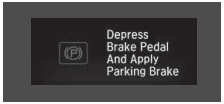
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if any door or the tailgate is not completely closed. • Appears if any door or the tailgate is opened while driving. The beeper sounds.	• Goes off when all doors and the tailgate are closed.
	• Appears if there is a problem with the shutter grille, and the radiator coolant temperature is too high.	• Power output will be reduced, so you may not be able to accelerate or maintain your current speed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
Canadian models 	• Appears when the washer fluid gets low.	• Refill the washer fluid. ➔ **Refilling Window Washer Fluid** P. 583
	• Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon. • Consequently, **Maintenance Due Now** and **Maintenance Past Due** follow.	➔ **Maintenance Minder Messages on the Driver Information Interface** P. 563
	• Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.	➔ **Overheating** P. 631

 * Not available on all models

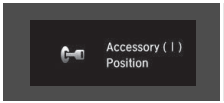
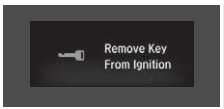
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1 without fastening the driver's seat belt.	• Fasten the seat belt properly before you start to drive.
	• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➔ **Checking the Battery** P. 604
	• Appears along with the battery charging system indicator when the battery is not charging.	• Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger to reduce electricity consumption. ➔ **If the Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 634
	• Appears if the automatic brake hold is automatically canceled while it is in operation.	• Immediately depress the brake pedal.
	• Appears when the automatic brake hold system is turned off.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 526
	• Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without wearing the driver's seat belt.	• Fasten the driver's seat belt. ➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 526
	• Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation.	• Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed. ➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 526
	• Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while it is in operation.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 526 ➔ **Parking Brake** P. 522

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

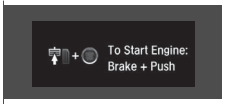
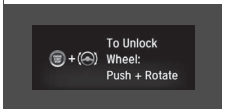
Continued

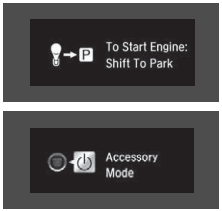
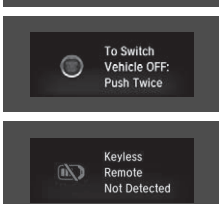
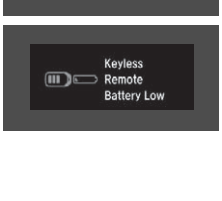
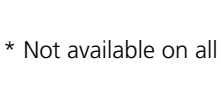
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation.	• **Appears while driving** - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed. ➔ **Parking Brake** P. 522
	• Appears if there is something wrong with the vehicle while you are driving.	• Immediately stop in a safe place. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	• Appears if the shift position cannot be changed to P due to a problem with the vehicle.	• Apply the parking brake once you have stopped. ➔ **Parking Brake** P. 522 • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Models without smart entry system

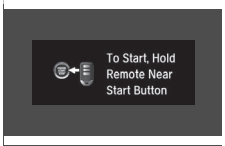
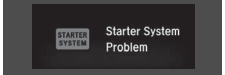
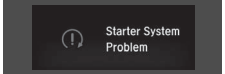
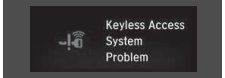
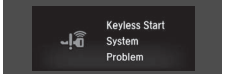
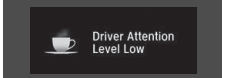
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in ACCESSORY I.	• Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0, then remove the key.
	• Appears when the ignition key is turned to ACCESSORY I from ON II. (The driver's door is closed.)	—
	• Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in LOCK 0.	• Remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.	**Starting the Engine** P. 460
	• Appears when the steering wheel is locked.	• Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

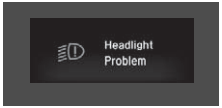
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P.	U.S. models • Move the shift lever to P. The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF. Canadian models • Move the shift lever to P, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice.
	• Appears if you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button and the parking brake is not activated or the shift lever is in N position.	• Move the shift lever to P position and start the engine.
	• Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	—
	• Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	• Change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. ➔ **ENGINE START/STOP Button*** P. 170
	• Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the smart entry remote inside the vehicle.	• Disappears when you bring the smart entry remote back inside the vehicle and close the door. ➔ **Smart Entry Remote Reminder** P. 172
	• Appears when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak.	• Replace the battery as soon as possible. ➔ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 606

 * Not available on all models

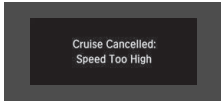
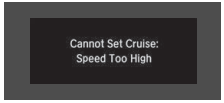
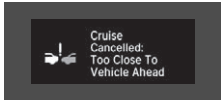
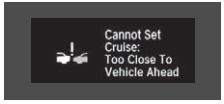
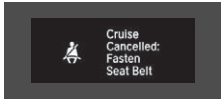
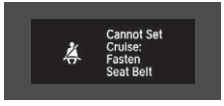
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if the smart entry remote battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. A beeper sounds six times.	• Bring the smart entry remote in front of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to be touched with. ➡ **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak** P. 625
U.S.  Canada 	• Appears when the starter system has a problem.	• As a temporary measure, press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
 	• Appears as soon as a problem is detected in the smart entry system or push button starting system.	• **Appears constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
 	• Appears if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving.	➡ **Driver Attention Monitor** P. 123

Continued

Models with LED headlight

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if there is a problem with the light control system.	• **Appears while driving** - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	• Appears if there is a problem with the headlights.	• **Appears while driving** - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Models with CMBS

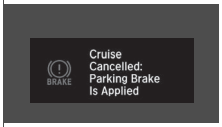
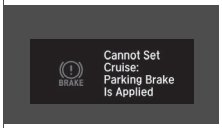
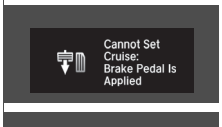
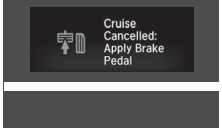
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled.	• You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC with LSF to cancel improves. Press the **RES/ +** button. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479
	• Appears when ACC with LSF is canceled due to excessive high vehicle speed.	• Reduce the speed, then reset ACC with LSF. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479
	• Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too high for you to set ACC with LSF.	• Reduce the speed, then set ACC with LSF. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479
	• Appears when the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close while ACC with LSF is in operation.	• ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479
	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close.	• ACC with LSF cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479
	• Appears when the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC with LSF.	• ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479
	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the driver's seat belt is unfastened.	• ACC with LSF cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479

* Not available on all models

Continued

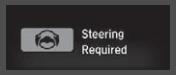
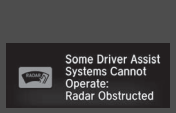
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the vehicle in front of you starts moving while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with LSF.	• Either press the **RES/+** button or **–/SET** button, or depress the accelerator pedal. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479
	• Appears when the shift lever is moved into any position other than D or S while ACC with LSF is in operation.	• ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479
	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the shift lever is in any position other than D or S.	• ACC with LSF cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479
	• Appears when the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope while ACC with LSF is in operation.	• ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479
	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.	• ACC with LSF cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479

 * Not available on all models

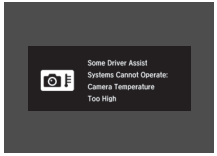
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while ACC with LSF is in operation.	• ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled. ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479 ➔ **Parking Brake** P. 522
	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the parking brake is applied.	• ACC with LSF cannot be set. ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479 ➔ **Parking Brake** P. 522
	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is depressed.	• ACC with LSF cannot be set. ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479
	• Appears if ACC with LSF is canceled while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC with LSF.	• Immediately depress the brake pedal.
	• Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you.	• Take the appropriate means to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.) ➔ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*** P. 530 ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 479

* Not available on all models

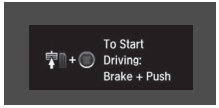
Continued

Message	Condition	Explanation
	**Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** • Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected line. The steering wheel vibrates rapidly.	• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. ➡ **Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*** P. 495
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System • Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane. **When you selected Warning Only** - The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane. **When you selected Normal or Wide** - The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected line. The system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.	• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. ➡ **Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*** P. 495 • You can change the setting for the road departure mitigation system. **Normal**, **Wide**, and **Warning Only** can be selected. ➡ **Customized Features** P. 349
	• Blinks when you fail to steer the vehicle. The beeper sounds simultaneously.	• Operate the steering wheel to resume the LKAS.
	• Appears if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front. • May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)	• When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover. ➡ **Honda Sensing®*** P. 26

 * Not available on all models

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high and some driver assist systems cannot be activated.	• Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. • **Disappears** - The camera has been cooled down and the systems are activated normally. ➔ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 477 ➔ **Auto High-Beam System*** P. 179
	• Appears if the area around the front sensor camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. and be prevented from detecting a vehicle in front. • May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)	• When the front window gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you cleaned the area around the camera. ➔ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 477 ➔ **Auto High-Beam System*** P. 179

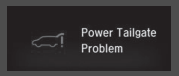
Models with remote engine starter

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when you unlock and open the driver's door while the engine is running by remote engine start.	➔ **Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback*** P. 462

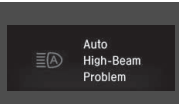
* Not available on all models

Continued

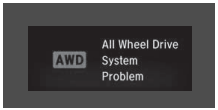
Models with power tail gate

Message	Condition	Explanation
U.S.  Canada 	• Appears when there is a problem with the power tailgate system.	• Manually open or close the power tailgate. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Models with Auto high-beam system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if there is a problem with the Auto high-beam system.	• Manually operate the headlight switch. • If you are driving with the high-beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams.

Models with real time AWD with intelligent control system™

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if there is a problem with the real time AWD with intelligent control system™.	• The engine drives the front wheels only in this state. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	• Appears when the differential temperature is too high.	• Stop in a safe place, put the transmission into P, and idle the engine until the message disappears. If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™*** P. 515

* Not available on all models

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in mph (U.S.) or km/h (Canada).

■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

■ Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Gauges

Models with information display

Press and hold the mile (U.S.)/km (Canada) change knob until you hear a beep. The speedometer reading and the displayed measurements switch between mph (U.S.) and km/h (Canada).

Models with driver information interface

Press the (display/information) button repeatedly until the icon is shown on the driver information interface. Press **ENTER**, then press and hold it again. The speedometer reading and the displayed measurements will switch between mph (U.S.) and km/h (Canada).

Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches E. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Temperature Gauge

NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

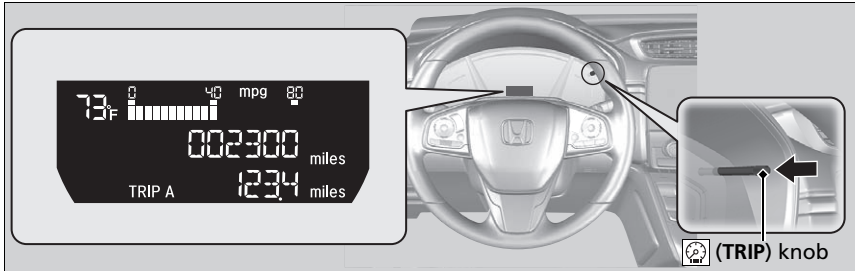
➡ **Overheating** P. 631

Information Display*

The information display shows the odometer, trip meter, engine oil life and maintenance service item codes, and other gauges.

Switching the Display

Press the (**TRIP**) knob to change the display.



Odometer

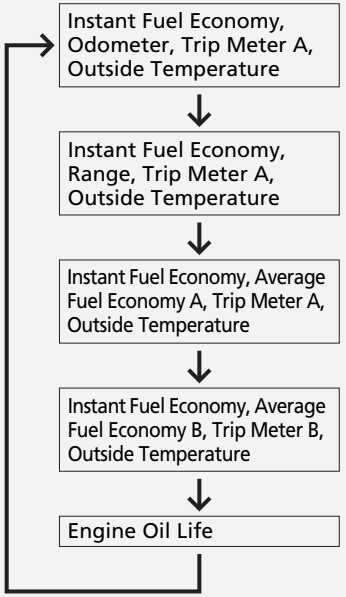
Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) that your vehicle has accumulated.

Trip Meter

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Switching the Display

Each time you press the knob, the information display changes as follows:



* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Resetting a trip meter**

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in mpg or l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

Average Fuel Economy

Press and hold the mile (U.S.)/km (Canada) change knob to switch the measurement.

■ Instant Fuel Economy Gauge

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in mpg or l/100km.

Instant Fuel Economy Gauge

Press and hold the mile (U.S.)/km (Canada) change knob to switch the measurement.

■ Engine Oil Life

Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.

➡ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 557

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

Range

Press and hold the mile (U.S.)/km (Canada) change knob to switch the measurement.

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S.) or Celsius (Canada).

■ Adjusting the outside temperature indicator

Adjust the temperature reading up to ± 5°F or ± 3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.

2. Press and hold the (**TRIP**) knob for 10 seconds or more while the outside temperature is shown on the information display.

▶ The information display goes into temperature adjustment mode. The display starts showing from -5°F to +5°F (U.S.) or -3°C to +3°C (Canada).

3. Release the knob when the right adjustment amount is shown.

▶ The adjustment is complete.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

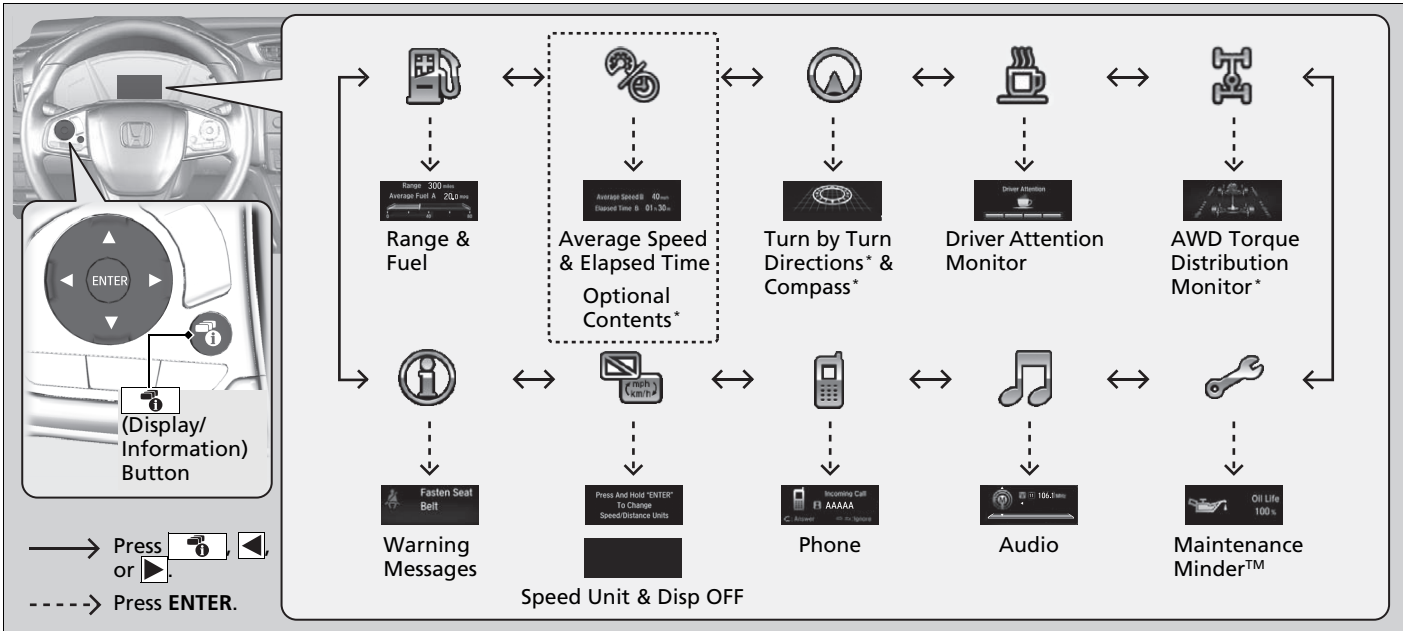
Driver Information Interface*

The driver information interface shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges.
It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

■ Switching the Display

■ Main displays

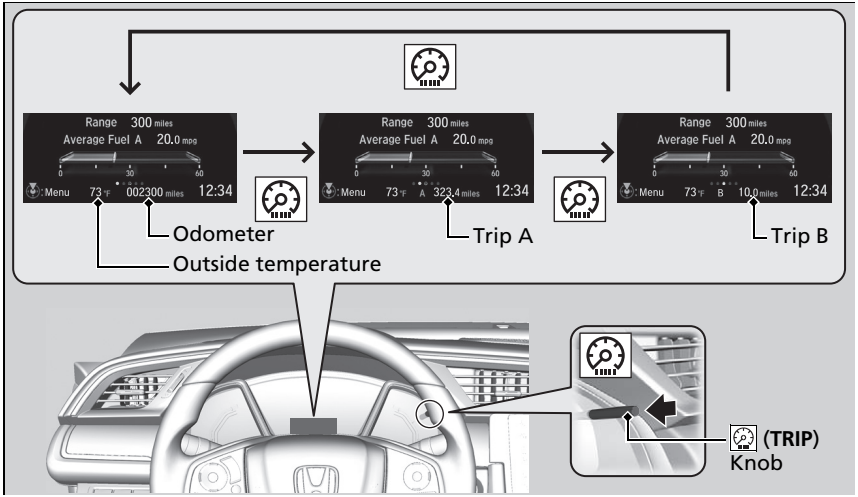
Press the (display/information) button and press ◀ or ▶ to change the display. Press **ENTER** to see detailed information.



* Not available on all models

■ Trip computer

Press the (**TRIP**) knob to change the display.



■ Odometer

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the knob, or by using the customized features on the audio/information display.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 349

Continued

■ **Resetting a trip meter**
To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in mpg or l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in mph (U.S.) or km/h (Canada) since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Engine Oil Life

Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.
➔ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 557

Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 349

Elapsed Time

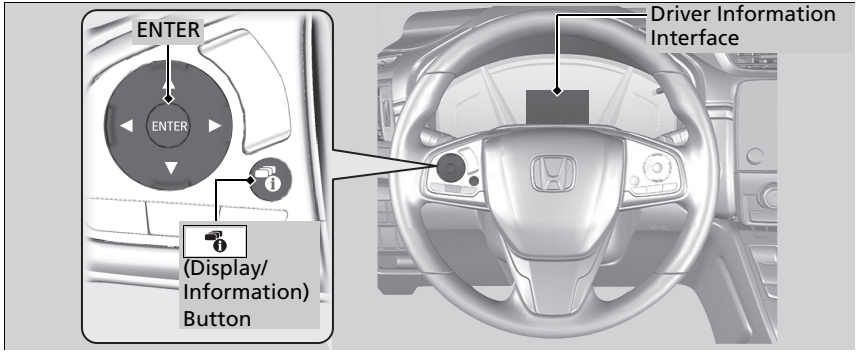
You can change when to reset the elapsed time.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 349

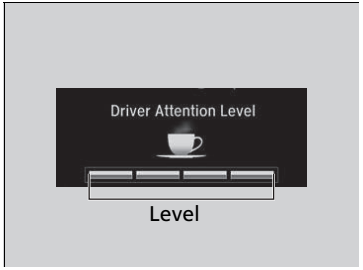
Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 349

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyzes steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention in the Driver Information Interface.





When the (display/information) button is pressed, bars in the Driver Information Interface light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

Switching the Display P. 117

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.
Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.

Continued



If two bars light up, the **Driver Attention Level Low** message will appear.



If one bar lights up, the **Driver Attention Level Low. Time For A Break** message will appear, a beep will sound, and the steering wheel will vibrate.
If this message appears, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.
The message will disappear when the **ENTER** button is pressed or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.
If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the message will appear again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.
The message does not appear when the traveling time is 30 minutes or less.

■ The Driver Attention Monitor resets when

- the engine is turned off.
- the driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

■ **For the Driver Attention Monitor to function**
- the vehicle must be traveling above 25 mph (40 km/h).
- the electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ **Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances.**
- the steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* is active.
  ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*** P. 499
- the condition of the road is poor, e.g. the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- it is windy.
- the driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner such as changing lanes or accelerating.

■ **Customizing**
You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile And Audible Alert**, **Tactile Alert**, or **OFF**.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 349

For the Driver Attention Monitor to function

The bars in the Driver Information Interface remain grayed out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S.) or Celsius (Canada).

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to ±5°F or ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Use the customized features in the audio/information screen to correct the temperature.

➢ **Customized Features** P. 349

■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in mpg or l/100 km.

■ AWD Torque Distribution Monitor*



The indicators on the display show the amount of torque being transferred to the right front, left front, right rear, and left rear wheels.

➢ **Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™*** P. 515

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

 * Not available on all models

■ Turn-by-Turn Directions*

Shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination linked with the navigation system.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

■ Audio

Show the current audio information.

➡ **Audio System Basic Operation** P. 258

■ Phone

Show the current phone information.

➡ ***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** P. 385

Turn-by-Turn Directions*

The driver information interface shows a compass when the route guidance is not used.

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 349

* Not available on all models

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.



Clock 130
Locking and Unlocking the Doors
Key Types and Functions 132
Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength* ... 134
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 135
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside ... 142
Childproof Door Locks 143
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 144
Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting 145
Opening and Closing the Tailgate ... 148
Security System
Immobilizer System 159
Security System Alarm* 159
Opening and Closing the Windows 162
Moonroof* 165
Panoramic Roof*1 166
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel
Ignition Switch* 169
ENGINE START/STOP Button* 170
Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison 173
Turn Signals 174
Light Switches 175
Fog Lights* 178
Auto High-Beam System* 179
Daytime Running Lights 182
Wipers and Washers 183
Brightness Control 186
Defogger/Heated Door Mirror* 188
Driving Position Memory System* 190
Adjusting the Steering Wheel 192
Adjusting the Mirrors 193
Adjusting the Seats 195
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items .. 205
Climate Control System
Using Automatic Climate Control 224
Synchronization Mode* 227
Automatic Climate Control Sensors 228

(*1: Canadian models only, if equipped)

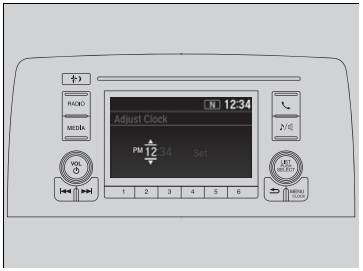
* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock

Models without navigation system

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the ignition switch in ON II*1.

■ Adjusting the Time



Models with color audio system

■ Using the MENU/CLOCK button

1. Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
   ▶ **Adjust Clock** is selected.
2. Rotate to change hour, then press.
3. Rotate to change minute, then press.
4. To enter the selection, rotate and select **Set**, then press.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Adjusting the Clock

Models with navigation system

The clock is automatically updated through the navigation system, so the time does not need to be adjusted.

Models with color audio system

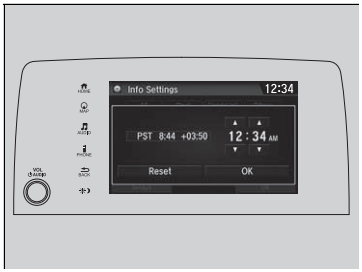
You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 349

Using the MENU/CLOCK button

Models with color audio system

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.
Rotate to select.
Press to enter.



Models with Display Audio

■ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
4. Select ▲ or ▼ to change hour.
5. Select ▲ or ▼ to change minute, then select **OK**.

Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

Models with Display Audio

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock and turn the clock display on and off.

Customized Features P. 349

Models with Display Audio

The clock is automatically updated when your smartphone is connected to the audio system.

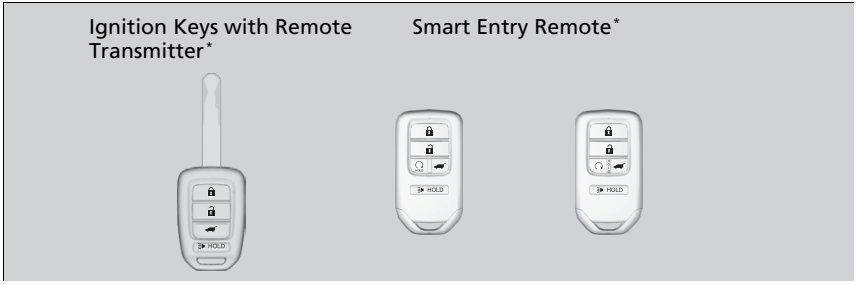
You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the upper right corner of the display.

1. Touch the clock on the display for a few seconds.
2. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Select ▲ or ▼ to change hour.
4. Select ▲ or ▼ to change minute, then select **OK**.

Key Types and Functions

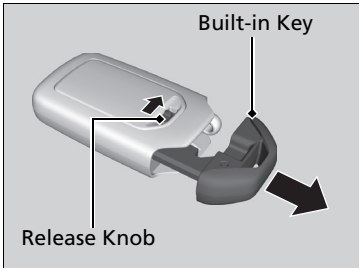
This vehicle comes with the following keys:

■ Keys



Use the key to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock the doors and tailgate. You can also lock and unlock the doors and tailgate pressing the buttons on remote transmitter.

■ Built-in Key*



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.
To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the smart entry remote until it clicks.

Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps protect against vehicle theft.

➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 159

The keys contain precision electronics.
Adhere to the following advice to prevent damage to the electronics:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

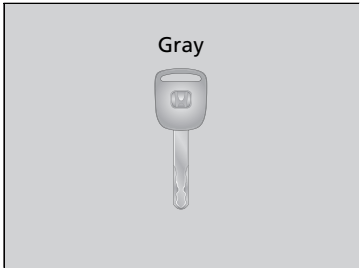
Models with remote engine starter

You can remotely start the engine using the one-way smart entry remote.

➡ **Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback*** P. 462

* Not available on all models

■ Valet Key*

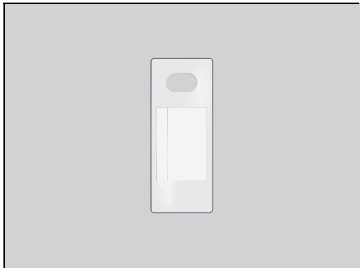


Can be used to start and stop the engine, and lock and unlock driver's door.

Valet Key*

When you need to leave a key with a third party, leave the valet key.

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength*

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the smart entry remote when locking/unlocking the doors, opening the tailgate, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors, opening the tailgate, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the smart entry remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the smart entry remote.

Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength*

Communication between the smart entry remote and the vehicle consumes the smart entry remote's battery.

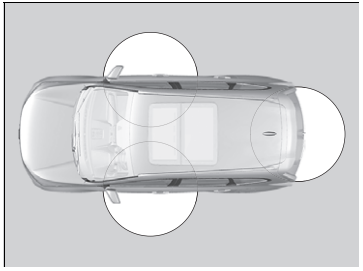
Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

The battery is consumed whenever the smart entry remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

* Not available on all models

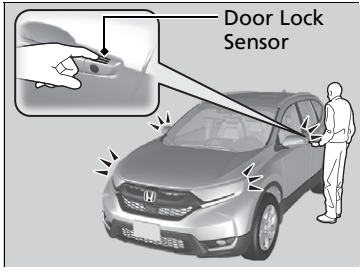
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*



When you carry the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the tailgate.

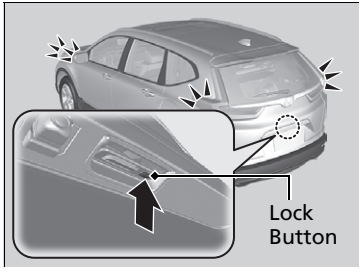
You can lock/unlock the doors within a radius of about 32 inches (80 cm) of the outside door handle. You can open the tailgate within about 32 inches (80 cm) radius from the tailgate outer handle.



■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Touch the door lock sensor on a front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.

▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system sets.



Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

➡ **Interior Lights** P. 205

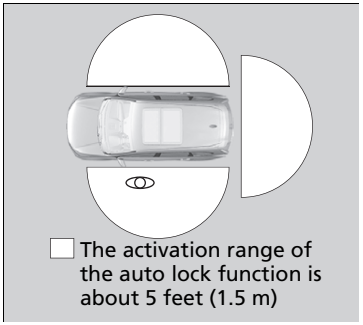
Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*

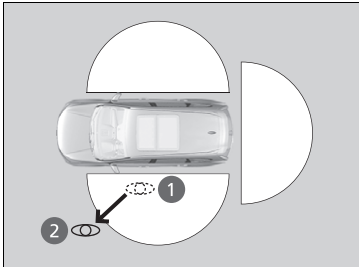
If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the smart entry system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the smart entry system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

* Not available on all models

Continued





■ Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock®)

When you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the smart entry remote, the doors will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors are closed, and the smart entry remote is within about 5 feet (1.5 m) radius of the outside door handle.

Exit vehicle while carrying smart entry remote and close door(s).

1. While within about 5 feet (1.5 m) radius of the vehicle.
▶ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

2. Carry the smart entry remote beyond about 5 feet (1.5 m) from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors will then lock.

Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock®)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 349

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the smart entry remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be canceled.

When all doors have been closed and the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle, or if the smart entry remote is not detected within about 5 feet (1.5 m) of the vehicle, auto lock function will not be activated.

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.

2. Open the driver's door.

3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.
▶ The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- Walk away at least more than about 5 feet (1.5 m) away from the vehicle while carrying the smart entry remote.

Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock®)

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door or the hood is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The smart entry remote is not located within a radius of about 5 feet (1.5 m) from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

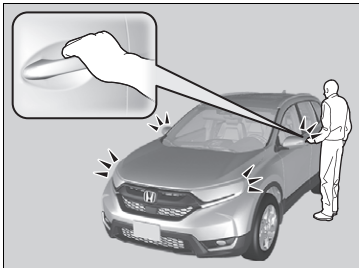
Auto lock function operation stop beeper

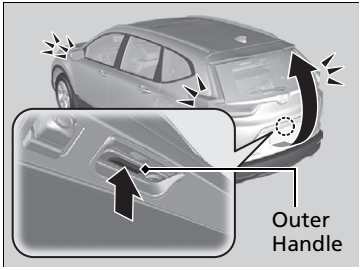
After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The smart entry remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The smart entry remote is put inside the tailgate.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the smart entry remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

Continued





■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Grab the driver's door handle:

▶ The driver's door unlocks.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

▶ All the doors and tailgate unlock.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Press the tailgate outer handle:

▶ The tailgate unlocks.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

➡ **Using the Outer Handle** P. 157

Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*

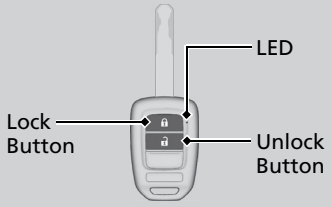
- Do not leave the smart entry remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be locked or unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the smart entry remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door might not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 32 inches (80 cm) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the smart entry remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The smart entry remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.
- The light flashes, and beeper sounds and unlock settings can be customized on the audio/information screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 349

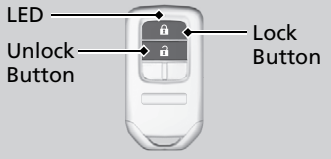
 * Not available on all models

■ Using the Remote Transmitter

Ignition keys with remote transmitter



Models with smart entry remote





■ Locking the doors

Press the lock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system* sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system* is set.

■ Unlocking the doors

Press the unlock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door unlocks.

Twice:

▶ The remaining doors and tailgate unlock.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

Models with Display Audio

You can change the relock timer setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 349

The remote transmitter will not work when:

Ignition keys with remote transmitter

- The key is in the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry remote

- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 606

Models with Display Audio

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

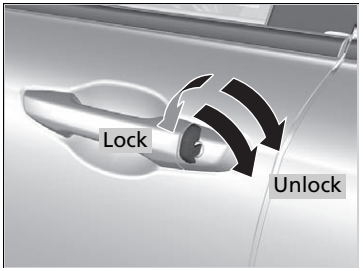
➡ **Customized Features** P. 349

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the smart entry remote battery or the vehicle battery is dead, use the key instead of the smart entry remote.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

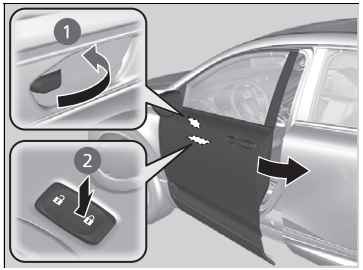
When you lock the driver's door with a key, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.

Models with Display Audio

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 349

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ❶ or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ❷, and close the door.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

Ignition keys with remote transmitter

The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry remote

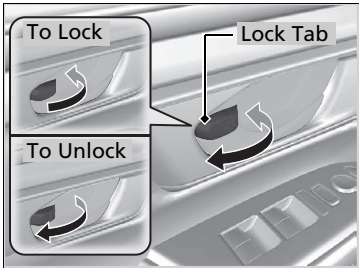
The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.
Make sure you have the key in your hand when you lock the driver's door, any of the other doors or the tailgate, otherwise you may end up locking the key inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



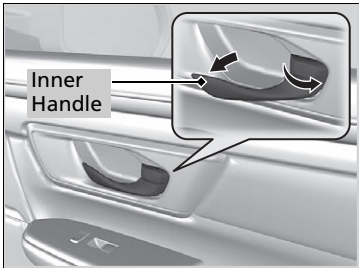
■ Locking a door
Push the lock tab forward.

■ Unlocking a door
Pull the lock tab rearward.

Using the Lock Tab

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all of the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.
When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



Pull the front door inner handle.
▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

To avoid all the doors to be unlocked, use the lock tab on the driver's door to unlock, then lock again before opening the door. This setting works for one time only. If you do not want all the doors to be unlocked all the time, customize the Auto Door Unlock setting to Off using the master door lock switch or Display Audio*.

➡ **Auto Door Locking/Unlocking** P. 144

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

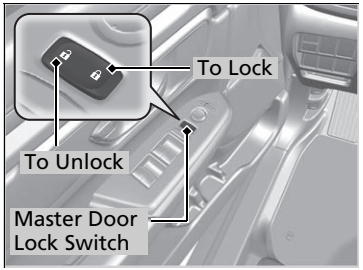
The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

➡ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 143

* Not available on all models

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

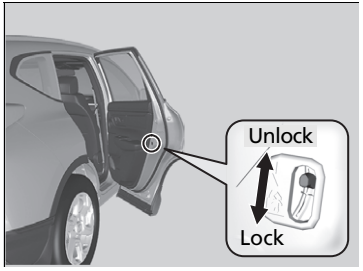


Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all doors and the tailgate.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

The front passenger's door also has the master door lock switch.

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks all doors and unlocks the all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors and tailgate lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h).

■ Auto Door Unlocking

■ Driver's door open mode

All doors unlock when the driver's door is opened.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the master door lock switch.

➢ **Customizing the Auto Door Locking/ Unlocking Setting** P. 145

Models with Display Audio

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the audio/ information screen.

➢ **Customized Features** P. 349

Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting

You can customize the auto door locking/unlocking setting to your liking using the master door lock switch.

List of the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Customizable Options

■ Auto door locking

Mode	Description
Drive Lock Mode[*1]	All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h).
Off	The auto door locking is deactivated all the time.

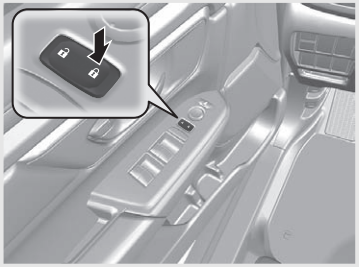
■ Auto door unlocking

Mode	Description
Driver's Door Open Mode[*1]	All doors unlock when the driver's door is opened.
Park Unlock Mode	All doors unlock when the shift lever is moved into P with the brake pedal depressed.
Off	The auto door unlocking is deactivated all the time.

*1:Default setting

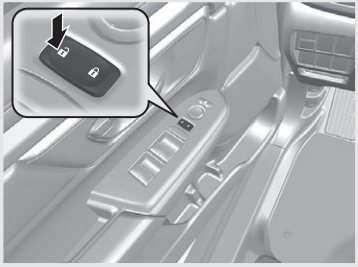
Continued

■ Customizing Flow for Auto Door Locking Options

Steps	Drive Lock Mode*2	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Put the transmission into P.	
2	Close the driver's door.	Open the driver's door.
3	Turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.	
4	Take the transmission out of P with the brake pedal depressed.	—
5	Press and hold the right side of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear a click twice. 	Press and hold the right side of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear one click.
6	Put the transmission into P.	—
7	Turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY I*1 within 20 seconds. ▶ Customization is completed.	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2:Default setting

■ Customizing Flow for Auto Door Unlocking Options

Steps	Driver's Door Open Mode*2	Park Unlock Mode	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Put the transmission into [P].		
2	Close the driver's door.		Open the driver's door.
3	Turn the ignition switch to ON [II]*1.		
4	Take the transmission out of [P] with the brake pedal depressed.	—	
5	Press and hold the left side of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear a click twice. 		
6	Put the transmission into [P].	—	
7	Turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY [I]*1 within 20 seconds. ▶ Customization is completed.		

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2:Default setting

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Models without power tailgate

- Open the tailgate all the way.
  ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

All models

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

▶ Avoid possible damage.

▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 76

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

⚠WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the cargo area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up cargo from the cargo area, or by using a forward and back kicking motion under the center of the rear bumper for hands free access*, while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the cargo space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

* Not available on all models

Models with power tailgate

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power tailgate button in the driver side control panel, pressing the button on the tailgate, or by raising and lowering your foot under the center of the rear bumper for hands free access*.

The power tailgate can be opened/closed when the transmission is in P.

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Models with power tailgate

⚠WARNING

Closing a power tailgate while anyone is in path of the tailgate can cause serious injury.

Make sure everyone is clear before closing the power tailgate.

NOTICE

Do not push or pull on the power tailgate when it is being automatically opened or closed.
Forcibly opening or closing the power tailgate while in operation can deform the tailgate frame.

When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits or closes on their heads. Be especially cautious if children are around.

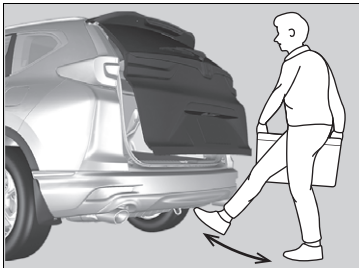
The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:
- You start the engine while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing.
- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

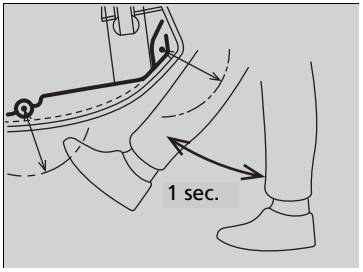
If you close the power tailgate with all the doors locked, the power tailgate locks automatically.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

■ Using the Hands Free Access*





Use a forward and back kicking motion under the center of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the smart entry remote.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and a beeper sounds once, then the tailgate begins to move.

Using the Hands Free Access*

During rain or in other instances when the vehicle becomes wet, the sensor may not properly detect your foot motion.

When performing work on or around the rear section of the vehicle, you may inadvertently open or close the tailgate.
To prevent this from happening, select Customized Features on the audio/information screen and then select OFF for the feature.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 349

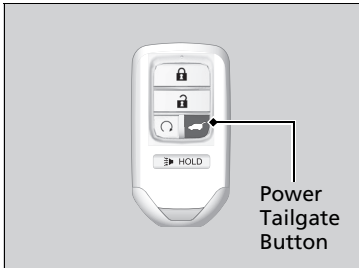
If you hold your foot under the bumper for too long, the power tailgate does not open or close.

This function will not operate if you don't have the smart entry remote on you. Please make sure you have the smart entry remote on you.

The duration of the kicking motion should be approximately one second.

 * Not available on all models

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the power tailgate button for more than one second to operate when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

▶ Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the button for more than one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

■ Customizing when to open the tailgate

Anytime: The power tailgate unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.

When Unlocked: The tailgate opens when all doors are unlocked.

➲ **Customized Features** P. 349

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

If you close the power tailgate when all the doors are locked, the power tailgate locks automatically.

If you replace the battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

Installing aftermarket components other than genuine Honda accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your cargo in and out.

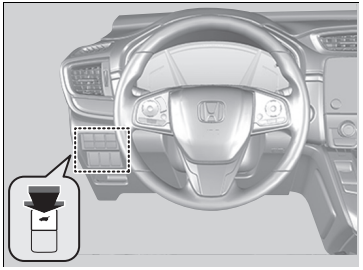
Make sure the power tailgate is fully closed before you start the vehicle.

The beeper sounds when you start driving while the power tailgate is still open, or closing.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Using the Power Tailgate Button



To open or close the power tailgate, press the power tailgate button for about one second.

▶ Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the button for about one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

If the power tailgate meets resistance while opening or closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. The beeper sounds three times.

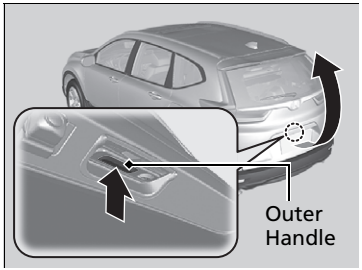
The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.

* Not available on all models

Using the Tailgate Outer Handle



If you press the outer handle of the tailgate for no longer than one second, the tailgate opens automatically.

▶ The beeper sounds.

▶ If you want to open the tailgate manually, press the button for more than one second.

➡ **Opening and Closing the Tailgate** P. 148

If you are carrying the smart entry remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

To close the tailgate, press the outer handle again while the tailgate opening.

If you press the outer handle again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the outer handle, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

Do not leave the key, remote transmitter*, or smart entry remote* in the cargo area before closing the tailgate.

Even if you are not carrying the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.

You can change the power tailgate operation setting on and off.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 349

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Using the Tailgate Inner Button

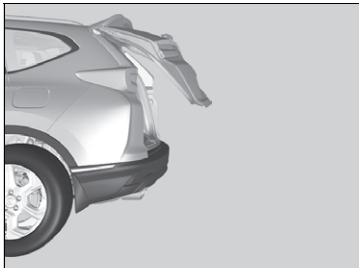


Press the button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

▶ The beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press and release the button again, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Programming Tailgate Position





The extent to which the power tailgate automatically opens can be programed.

To program:

1. Open the tailgate to the desired position.
▶ If you want to reprogram the power tailgate to open all the way, manually raise the tailgate to its upper most position and follow the next step.

2. Press and hold the tailgate inner button until you hear short two beeps following one long buzzer.

Programming Tailgate Position

If the tailgate is only slightly opened, the position cannot be programmed, even if you push the inner button.

Continued

■ Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

Auto-Closer

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you press the tailgate outer handle while the power tailgate is closing.

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.

■ Power Tailgate Fall Detection

Automatically lowers the power tailgate when there is a possibility that the fully opened power tailgate can fall down by its own weight (for example, by snow on the tailgate). The beeper sounds while the power tailgate lowers.

Power Tailgate Fall Detection

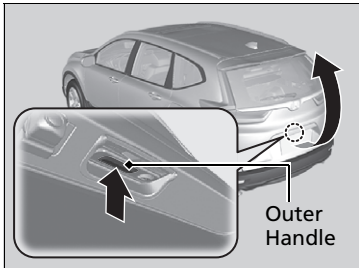
If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fall detection may be activated.

Once the power tailgate fall detection activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

If the power tailgate fall detection constantly activates, consult at a dealer.

Opening/Closing the Tailgate

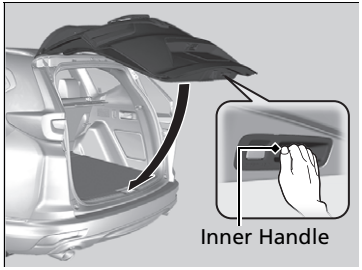
Using the Outer Handle



When all the doors are unlocked or press the tailgate unlock button on the remote transmitter, the tailgate is unlocked.
Press the outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

Models with smart entry system

If you are carrying the smart entry remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.



To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

Using the Outer Handle

Do not leave the key, remote transmitter*, or smart entry remote* in the cargo area before closing the tailgate.

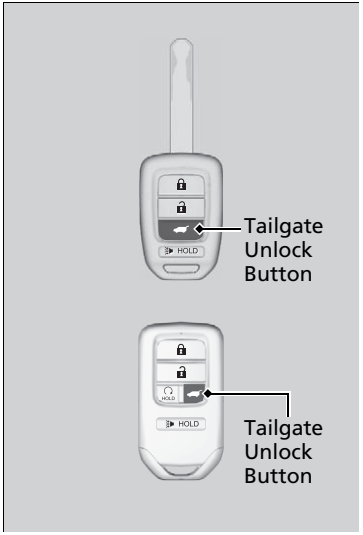
Models with smart entry system

Even if you are not carrying the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Using the Remote Transmitter*



Press the tailgate unlock button to unlock the tailgate.

Using the Remote Transmitter*

If you have unlocked and opened the tailgate using the remote transmitter or smart entry remote*, when closing, the tailgate locks automatically.

 * Not available on all models

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when inserting the key into the ignition switch* or pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ignition switch* or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ignition switch* or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.
Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

Canadian models only: Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the vehicle on the first time after the battery has been disconnected.

Security System Alarm*

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, hood or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not go off if the tailgate or doors are opened with the key, remote transmitter or smart entry system.

However, the alarm goes off if a door is opened with the key, then the shift lever is moved out of P or the hood is opened before the power mode is set to ON.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently and all the exterior lights flash.

Security System Alarm*

The security alarm continues for a maximum of two minutes until the security system deactivates.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ To deactivate the security system alarm
Unlock the vehicle using the key, remote transmitter or smart entry system. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm
The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:
- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The hood and tailgate are closed.
- All doors and tailgate are locked with the key, the remote transmitter, or smart entry system.

■ When the security system alarm sets
The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm
The security system alarm is canceled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or smart entry system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Security System Alarm*

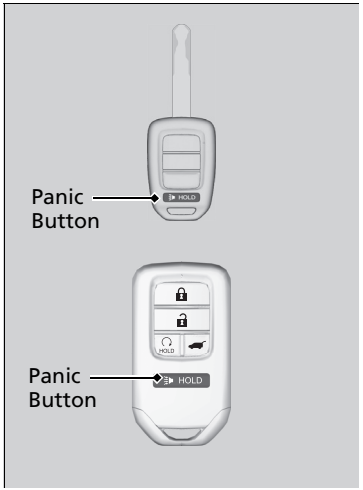
Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:
- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the hood with the hood release handle.
- Moving the shift lever out of P.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.
If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key or remote transmitter.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

 * Not available on all models

■ Panic Mode



■ The panic button on the remote transmitter

If you press the panic button for approximately one second, the following will occur for about 30 seconds:

- The horn sounds.
- Some exterior lights flash.

■ Canceling panic mode

Press any button on the remote transmitter, or turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

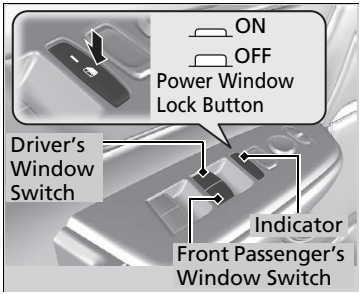
Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the ignition switch is in ON (II)*1, using the switches on the doors. The driver side switches can be used to open and close all the windows.

The power window lock button on the driver side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is switched on (pushed in, indicator on), you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

■ Opening/Closing Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



■ Automatic operation
To open: Push the switch down firmly.
To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation
To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

⚠WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch off*1. Opening either front door cancels this function.

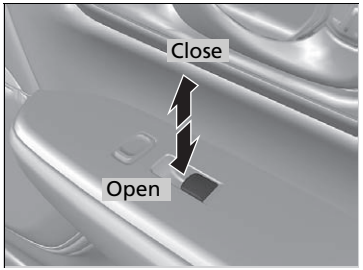
Auto Reverse
If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it stops closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

You cannot fully open the rear windows.

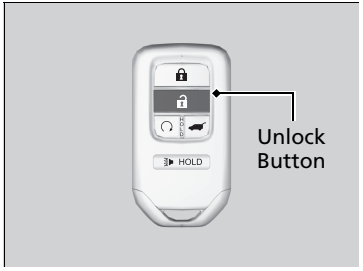
Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function



To open: Push the switch down.
To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

Opening Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Remote



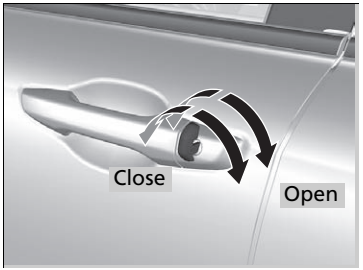
To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and keep it pressed. If the windows and moonroof* or panoramic roof*1 stop midway, repeat the procedure.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

* Not available on all models

Continued

Opening/Closing Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Key



To open: Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.

To close: Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows/moonroof* or panoramic roof*1 at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

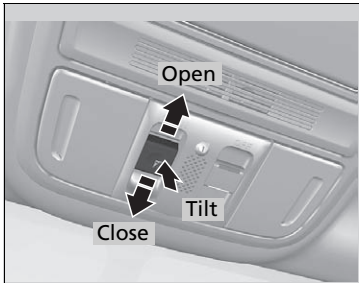
*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

* Not available on all models

Opening and Closing the Moonroof

You can operate the moonroof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the moonroof.

■ Using the Moonroof Switch



■ Automatic operation
To open: Pull the switch back firmly.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The moonroof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the moonroof midway, touch the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation
To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Tilting the moonroof up
To tilt: Push on the center of the moonroof switch.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

Using the Moonroof Switch

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

NOTICE
Opening the moonroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the moonroof panel or motor.
The power moonroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
Opening either front door cancels this function.
When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the moonroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the moonroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the moonroof.
You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the moonroof.

➡ **Opening Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Remote** P. 163
➡ **Opening/Closing Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Key** P. 164

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped
* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

You can operate the panoramic roof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the panoramic roof.

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing the panoramic roof or sunshade on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the panoramic roof and sunshade before opening or closing it.

NOTICE

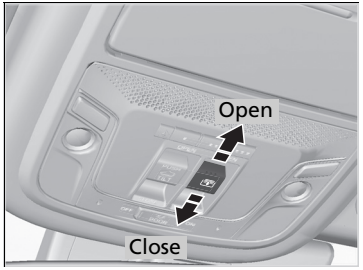
Opening the panoramic roof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the panoramic roof panel or motor.

The panoramic roof and sunshade can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
Opening either front door cancels this function.

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the panoramic roof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the panoramic roof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the panoramic roof.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

■ Using the Sunshade Switch



■ Automatic operation
To open: Pull the switch back firmly.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunshade automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunshade midway, touch the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation
To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the panoramic roof.

➡ **Opening Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Remote** P. 163
➡ **Opening/Closing Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Key** P. 164

Using the Sunshade Switch

The sunshade can be opened or closed to adjust the amount of light that enters the cabin.

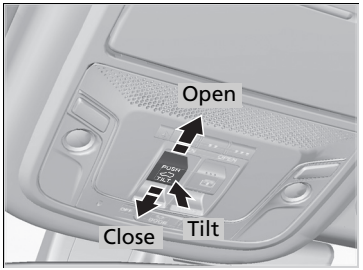
When you use the sunshade switch to open the sunshade, the panoramic roof does not move.

The sunshade cannot be fully closed if the panoramic roof is open. When you close the sunshade with the panoramic roof open, the sunshade stops slightly ahead of the panoramic roof glass. When you push the switch forward again, the sunshade and the panoramic roof close together.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Using the Panoramic Roof Switch



■ Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The panoramic roof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the panoramic glass midway, touch the switch briefly.

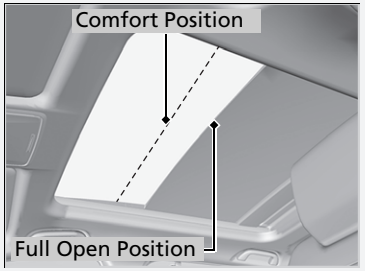
■ Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Tilting the panoramic roof up

To tilt: Push on the center of the panoramic roof switch.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

Using the Panoramic Roof Switch

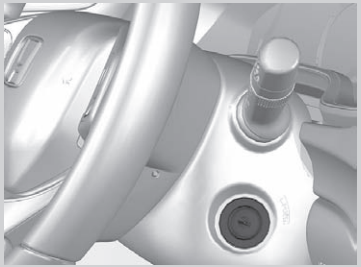


The panoramic roof cannot be fully opened in a single operation. The panoramic roof has a "comfort" position or wind noise reduction position at which the roof first stops. To open fully, pull the switch back again after the roof has stopped at this position.

Whenever the panoramic roof is opening, the sunshade moves along with it. However, when the panoramic roof is closing, the sunshade does not move.

When you tilt open the panoramic roof, the sunshade opens slightly to let in fresh air. When you close the panoramic roof from this position, the sunshade returns to its closed position.

Ignition Switch*



0 LOCK: Insert and remove the key in this position.

I ACCESSORY: Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.

II ON: This is the position when driving.

III START: This position is for starting the engine. The switch returns to ON II when you let go of the key.

Ignition Switch*

You cannot take the key out unless the shift lever is in P.

If you open the driver's door when the key is in LOCK 0 or ACCESSORY I, a warning buzzer will sound to remind you to take the key out.

When this happens, the following messages appear on the driver information interface*:

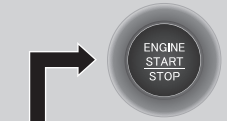
- In LOCK 0: or the symbol with a **Remove Key From Ignition**
- In ACCESSORY I: or the symbol with a **Return Ignition Switch To Lock (0) Position**
  The buzzer will stop when you take the key out.

If the key won't turn from LOCK 0 to ACCESSORY I, turn the key while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the key to turn.

* Not available on all models

ENGINE START/STOP Button*

■ Changing the Power Mode



VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)
The button is off.
The steering wheel is locked*1.
The power to all electrical components is turned off.



ACCESSORY
The button blinks (in red).
Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.



ON
The button blinks (in red).
All electrical components can be used.

Without pressing the brake pedal

Press the button without the shift lever in P.

Press the button.

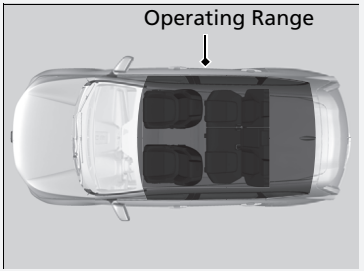
Shift to P then press the button.

U.S. models
Shift to P.

*1:Except U.S. models

ENGINE START/STOP Button*

ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range



You can start the engine when the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.
The engine may also run if the smart entry remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

If the battery of the smart entry remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

➡ **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak** P. 625

The power system may also start if the smart entry remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

* Not available on all models

■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the shift lever in P and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid the battery drain.

Canadian models

When in this mode:
The steering wheel does not lock.
You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the smart entry system.
Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

ENGINE START/STOP Button*

Canadian models

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

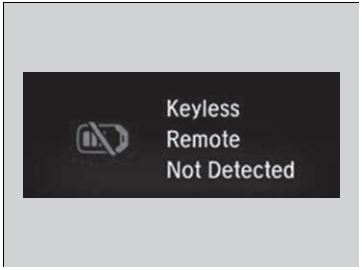
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning buzzer sounds.

■ Smart Entry Remote Reminder



Warning buzzers may sound from inside or/and outside the vehicle to remind you that the smart entry remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it within its operational range.

■ When the power mode is in ON

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, warning buzzers sound from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the driver information interface notifies the driver inside that the remote is out.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all the doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

Smart Entry Remote Reminder

When the smart entry remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the smart entry remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

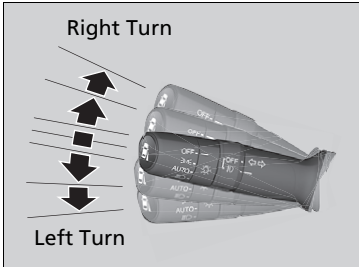
Do not put the smart entry remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

Ignition Switch Position	LOCK (0) (with/without the key) 	ACCESSORY (I) 	ON (II) 	START (III) 
Without Smart Entry System	• Engine is turned off and power is shut down. • The steering wheel is locked*1. • No electrical components can be used.	• Engine is turned off. • Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.	• Normal key position while driving. • All electrical components can be used.	• Use this position to start the engine. • The ignition switch returns to the ON (II) position when you release the key.
Power Mode	VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) 	ACCESSORY 	ON  Button is: Blinking On	START 
With Smart Entry System and **ENGINE START/STOP** Button	Button-Off • Engine is turned off and power is shut down. • The steering wheel is locked*1. • No electrical components can be used.	Button-Blinking • Engine is turned off. • Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.	Button-Blinking (engine is turned off) On (engine is running) • All electrical components can be used.	Button-On • The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts.

*1:Canadian models

Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

■ **One-touch turn signal**

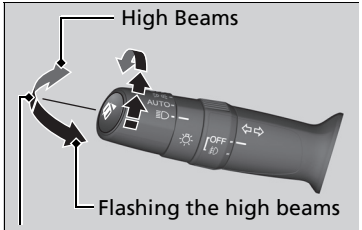
When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times.

This feature can be used when signaling for a lane change.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Light Switches

■ Manual Operation



Turns on parking, side marker, tail, and rear license plate lights

Turns on headlights, parking, side marker, tail, and rear license plate lights

Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting or position of the ignition switch.

■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

Light Switches

Models without smart entry system

If you remove the key from the ignition switch with the lights on, a light on reminder chime sounds when you open the driver's door.

Models with smart entry system

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

All models

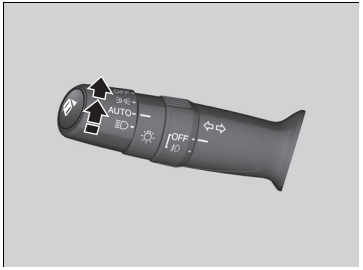
When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

➔ **Indicators** P. 80

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

Continued

■ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)*



Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

When you turn the light switch to **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

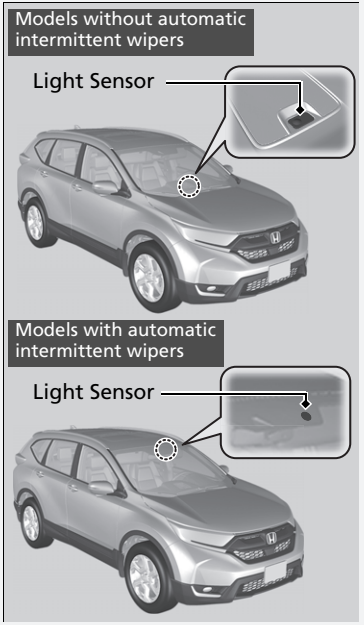
▶ You can change the auto light sensitivity setting.

Customized Features P. 349

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)*

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.



* Not available on all models

Headlight Integration with Wipers*

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)*

Adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at
Max	Bright
High	
Mid	
Low	Dark
Min	

Headlight Integration with Wipers*

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.
The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

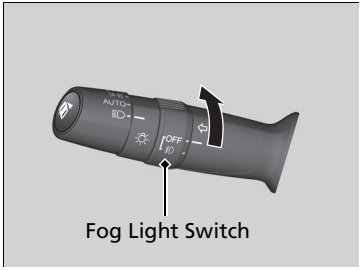
▶ You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 349

If you turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1 with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

Fog Lights*



Fog Light Switch

Can be used when the low beam headlights are on.

Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the position.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Fog Lights*

When the fog lights are on, the indicator in the instrument panel will be on.
They go off when the headlights turn off, or when the daytime running lights are on.

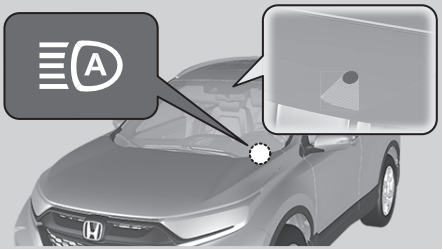
➡ **Daytime Running Lights** P. 182

Auto High-Beam System*

Using a camera mounted to the inside of the windshield, this system detects light sources ahead of the vehicle. Depending on the light source, the system automatically switches the headlights to high beam for optimal visibility at night.

The system operates when:

- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The low beams are on and the system recognizes that you are driving at night.
- The vehicle speed is above 25 mph (40 km/h).

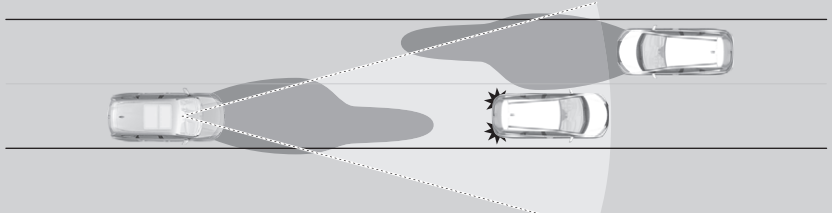


How it works:

When the camera detects lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle, the headlights remain in low beam.

When the camera detects no lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle, the headlights change to high beam.

The view angle or distance that the camera can detect lights ahead differs depending on conditions, such as the brightness of the lights and the weather.



Auto High-Beam System*

The auto high-beam system determines when to change the headlight beams by responding to the brightness of the lights ahead of your vehicle. In the following cases, the system may not respond to the lights properly:

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windshield frost, etc.).
- Other light sources, such as streetlights and electric billboards are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.

If you find the timing of beam changes inconvenient for driving, change the headlight beams manually.

If you do not want the system to be activated at any time when the headlight switch is in **AUTO**, consult a dealer.

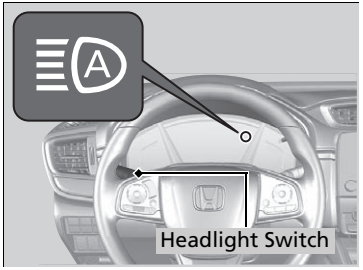
If you do not want the system to be activated at any time when the headlight switch is in **AUTO**, consult a dealer or disable the system.

Disabling or Re-enabling the System P. 181

* Not available on all models

Continued

To Operate the System



To activate the system, turn the headlight switch to **AUTO** and then set the headlights to low beam. The auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Light Switches P. 175

The high beams remain on unless:

- You have been driving below 15 mph (24 km/h) for an extended amount of time.
- The speed of the vehicle drops below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- The windshield wipers have been running at a high speed for more than a few seconds.
- You enter a well lit location.

The high beams come back on once the condition that caused them to turn off no longer exists.

If needed, you can temporarily turn the high-beams off manually. Turn on the high-beams by pushing the lever forward until you hear a click, or flash the high beams once by pulling the lever towards you. To turn the high beams back on, repeat one of the procedures.

To Operate the System

For the auto high-beam system to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windshield around the camera clean.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film in the area around the camera.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

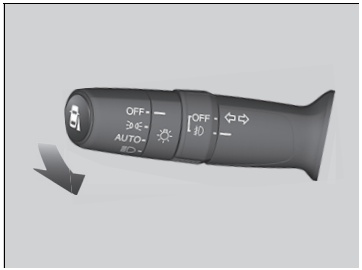
If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the air flow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windshield. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windshield and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Disabling or Re-enabling the System



Disable or re-enable the system when the vehicle is parked and the power mode is in ON and the light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Disabling the system: Pull the light switch lever towards you and hold it for at least 40 seconds.

Re-enabling the system: Pull the light switch lever towards you and hold it for at least 30 seconds.

Disabling or Re-enabling the System

The auto high-beam system will remain in the selected disabled or re-enabled setting each time you start the engine.

Daytime Running Lights

The parking/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in ON (II)*1.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO*** or **OFF** or .
- The parking brake is released.

The lights remain on even if you set the parking brake. Turning off the ignition switch or setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

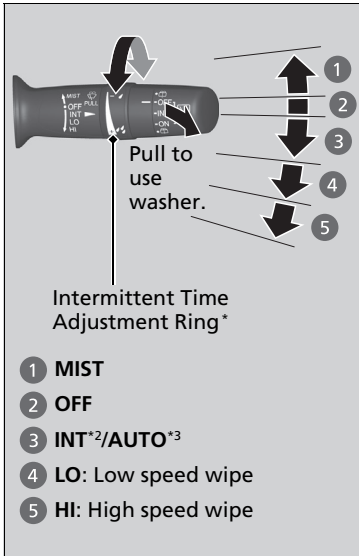
The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the headlight switch is in **AUTO*** and it is getting darker outside.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Wipers and Washers

■ Windshield Wipers/Washers



1. **MIST**
2. **OFF**
3. **INT*2/AUTO*3**
4. **LO**: Low speed wipe
5. **HI**: High speed wipe

The windshield wipers and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT*2/AUTO*3, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Adjusting wiper operation*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windshield, then stop.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2: Models with manual intermittent operation
*3: Models with automatic intermittent operation

* Not available on all models

Continued

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windshield is dry. The windshield will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windshield.
Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the defogger to warm the windshield, then turn the wipers on.

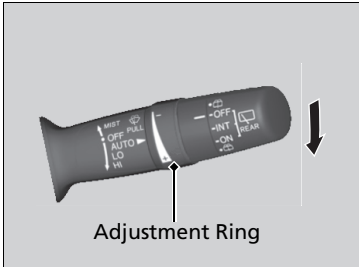
Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.
When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting (4) and the **LO** setting become the same.

If the wiper stops operating due to an obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY I or LOCK 0*1, then remove the obstacle.

■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windshield wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Sensor sensitivity



Low Sensitivity

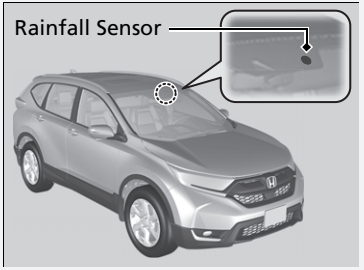
High Sensitivity

Wipers and Washers

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.

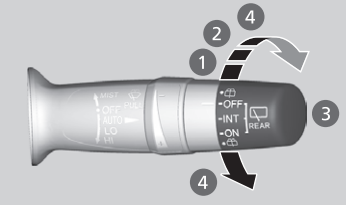


AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

 * Not available on all models

■ Rear Wiper/Washer



1. **INT**: Intermittent
2. **ON**: Continuous wipe
3. **OFF**
4. Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer ( )

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.
Hold it to activate the wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, it stops operating after a few more sweeps.

■ Operating in reverse

When you shift the transmission to R with the windshield wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
INT (Intermittent)	Intermittent
LO (Low speed wipe) **HI** (High speed wipe)	Continuous

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Brightness Control



With the parking lights are turned on and the ignition switch is in ON II*1, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.

Brighten: Turn the knob to the right.

Dim: Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beeper when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Brightness Control

Instrument panel brightness differs between when the exterior lights are on and when they are off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when the lights are on.

Models with headlight integration with wipers

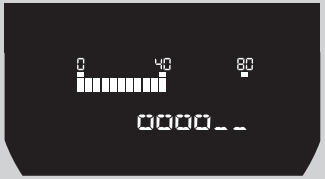
When it is bright outside and the headlight integration with the wiper is activated, the instrument panel brightness does not change.

Turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max. This cancels the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

To cancel the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on, turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds.

Information display



Driver information interface



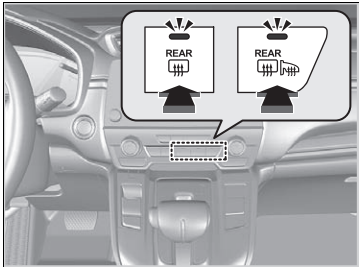
■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the information display while you are adjusting it.

Defogger/Heated Door Mirror*

■ Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror* Button

Press the rear defogger and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.



Models without heated door mirror

The rear defogger automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below, it does not automatically switch off.

Models with heated door mirror

The rear defogger and heated door mirror automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below, they do not automatically switch off.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Defogger/Heated Door Mirror*

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged or deiced. Also, do not use the system for a long period when the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

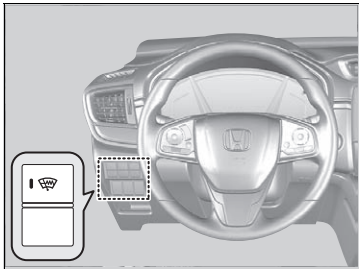
Models with heated door mirror

When the outside temperature is below 41°F (5°C), the heated door mirror may activate automatically for 10 minutes when you set the power mode to ON.

* Not available on all models

Canadian models

Heated Windshield Button



Press the heated windshield button to deice the windshield when the power mode is in ON.

Heated Windshield Button

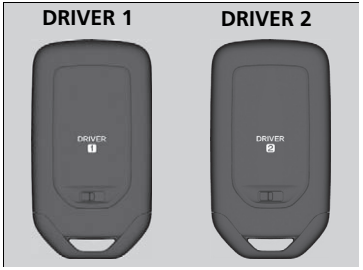
This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged or deiced. Also, do not use the system for a long period when the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

Driving Position Memory System*

You can store two driver's seat positions (except for power lumbar) with the driving position memory system.

When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote transmitter or the smart entry system, the seat adjusts automatically to one of the two preset positions.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button 2.



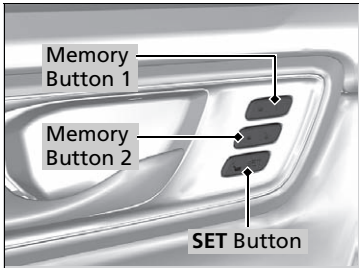
Driving Position Memory System*

Using the audio/information screen, you can disable the automatic seat adjustment function.

Customized Features P. 349

 * Not available on all models

Storing a Position in Memory



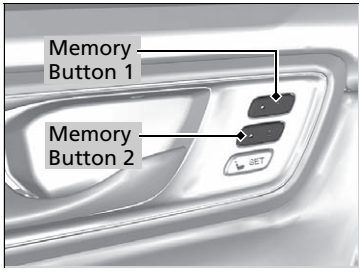
1. Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired position.
2. Press the **SET** button.
   ▶ You will hear a beep, and the memory button indicator light will blink.
3. Press and hold memory button 1 or 2 within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
   ▶ Once the seat position has been memorized, the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on.

Storing a Position in Memory

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be canceled when:

- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the double-beep.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

Recalling the Stored Position



1. Move the shift lever to P.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Press a memory button (1 or 2).
   ▶ You will hear a beep, and the indicator light will blink.

The seat will automatically move to the memorized position. When it has finished moving, you will hear a beeper, and the indicator light stays on.

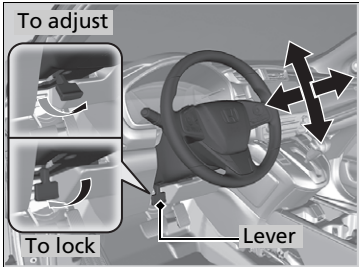
Recalling the Stored Position

The seat will stop moving if you:

- Press the **SET** button, or a memory button (1 or 2).
- Adjust the seat position.
- Shift into any position except P.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

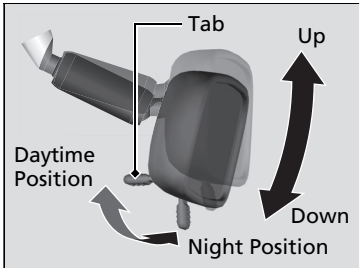
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Make any steering wheel adjustments before you start driving.

Interior Rearview Mirror

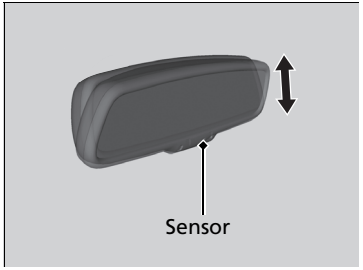
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

■ Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position.
The night position will help reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



When driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. This feature is always active.

Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

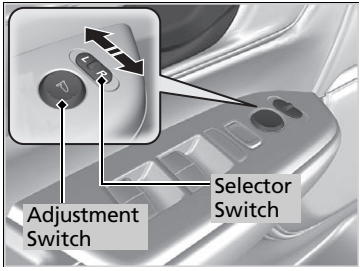
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
➡ **Front Seats** P. 195

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the shift position is in R.

* Not available on all models

Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

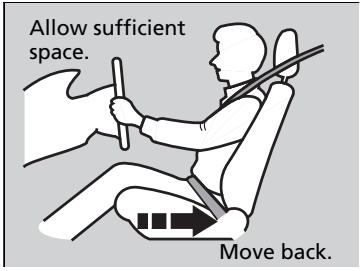
■ **Mirror position adjustment**

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the center position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

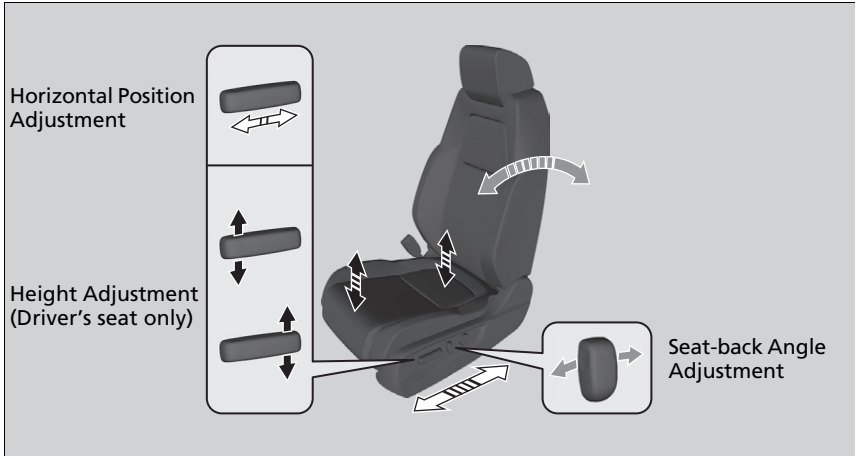
Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Adjusting the Seat Positions

Adjusting the front power seat*



Adjusting the Seats

⚠WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

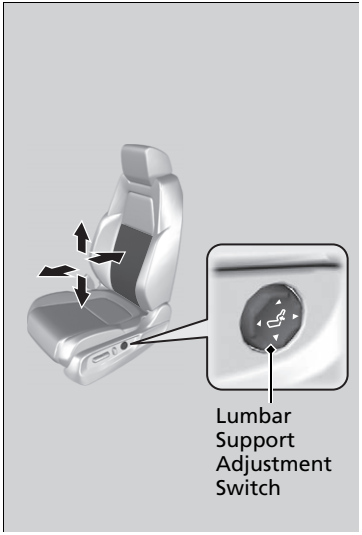
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

* Not available on all models

Continued



■ **Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch***

Press the top: To move the lumbar support up.

Press the bottom: To move the lumbar support down.

Press the front: To increase the entire lumbar support.

Press the rear: To decrease the entire lumbar support.

 * Not available on all models

■ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*



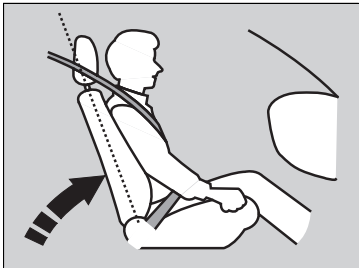
Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

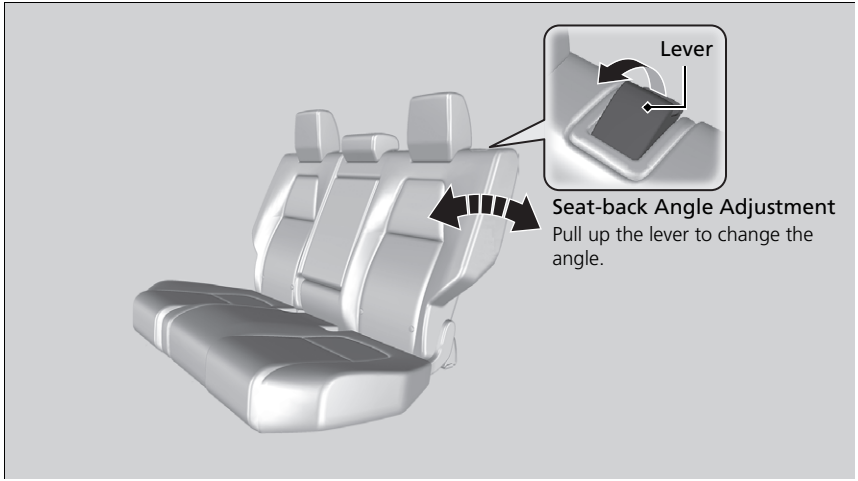
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

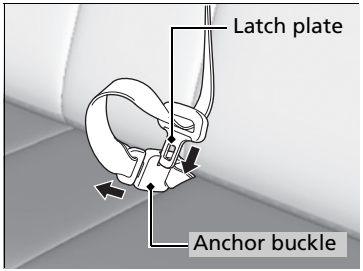
If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Rear Seats

Adjusting the Seat Positions



Folding Down the Rear Seats



1. Store the center seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.
2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
   Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor P. 46
3. Lower the rear seat head restraint to its lowest position. Put the armrest back into the seat-back.

Continued

Rear Seats

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

Folding Down the Rear Seats

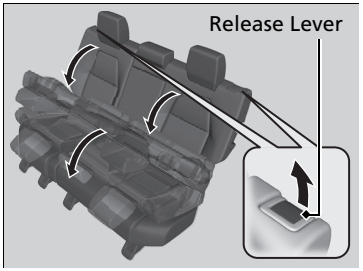
The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the cargo area.

Remove any items from the rear seat cushion and floor before you fold down the rear seat.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the tailgate open.
Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 76

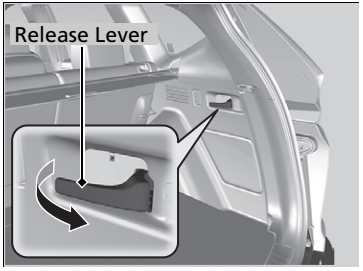
When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.

Make sure all items in the cargo area or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.



From the rear seat side

4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.



From the cargo area side

4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

Folding Down the Rear Seats

Make sure that the folded seat-back does not press against the front passenger seat, as this can cause the weight sensors in the front passenger seat to work improperly.

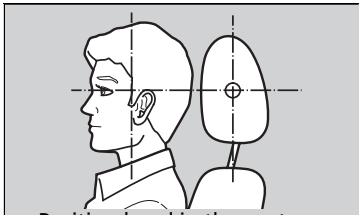
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator P. 61

Make sure the seat-back, head restraints and seat cushion are securely latched back into place before driving.

Head Restraints

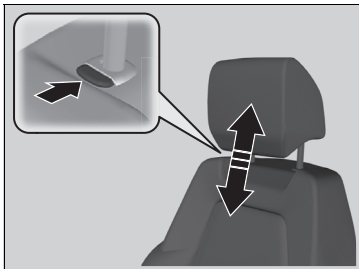
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraints



Position head in the center of the head restraint.

Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the center of the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the center height of the restraint.



To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint: Push it down while pressing the release button.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraints

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

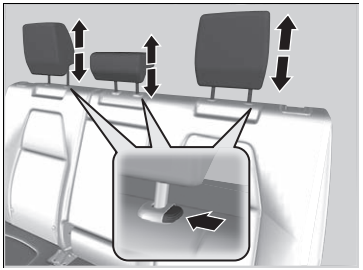
Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

Continued

■ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position



A passenger sitting in the rear seat should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

⚠WARNING

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

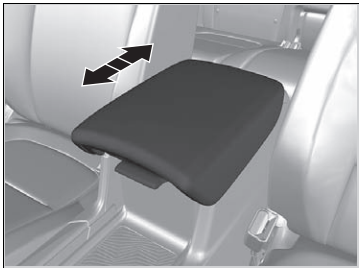
⚠WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest

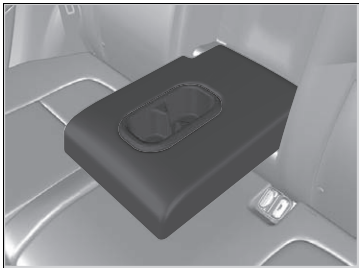


The console lid can be used as an armrest.

To adjust:

Slide the armrest to a desired position.

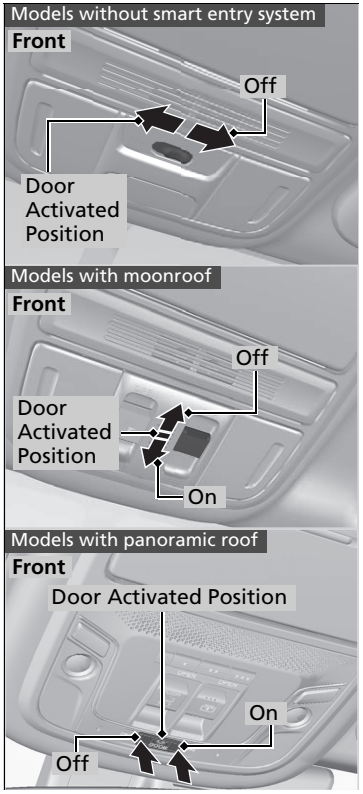
■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest



Pull down the armrest in the center seat-back.

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches



■ **ON**

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ **Door activated**

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.

Models without smart entry system

- You remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ **OFF**

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed. The lights go off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.

Models without smart entry system

- When you remove the key from the ignition switch but do not open a door.

Models with smart entry system

- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

Models with Display Audio

You can change the interior lights dimming time.
Customized Features P. 349

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.

Models without smart entry system

- When you close the driver's door with the key in the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

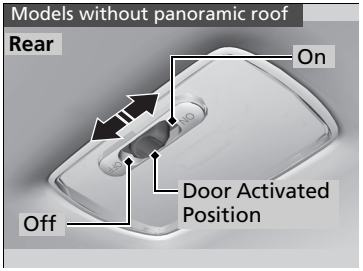
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine or power system is off.

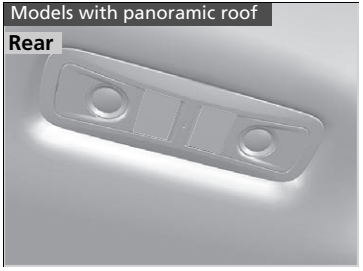
If you leave any doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, or without the key in the ignition switch, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

Continued

Models without panoramic roof

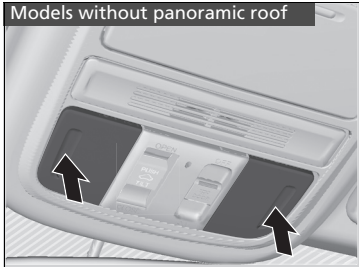


Models with panoramic roof



Map Lights

Models without panoramic roof



Front

Models without panoramic roof

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lens.

Models with panoramic roof



Models with panoramic roof

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the button.

Map Lights

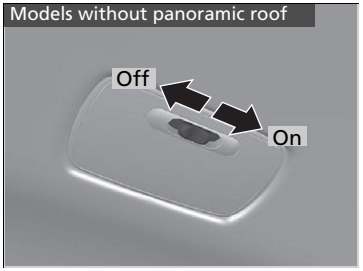
Models without panoramic roof

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the lens.

Models with panoramic roof

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and a door is opened or interior light switch is in the **ON** position, the rear map light will not go off when you press the button.

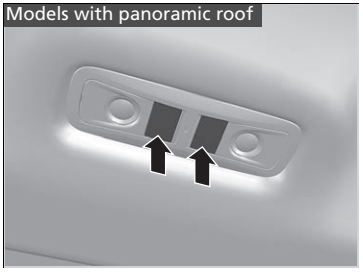
Continued



■ **Rear**

Models without panoramic roof

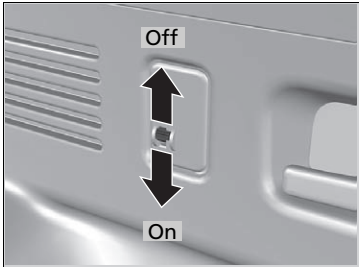
The map lights can be turned on and off by sliding the switch.



Models with panoramic roof

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the button.

■ Cargo Area Lights



■ **ON**

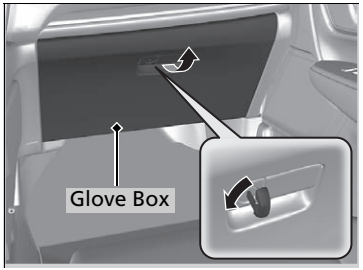
The light comes on when you open the tailgate, and goes off when closed.

■ **OFF**

The light stays off with or without opening the tailgate.

Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box. You can lock the glove box with the master key or the built-in key.

Glove Box

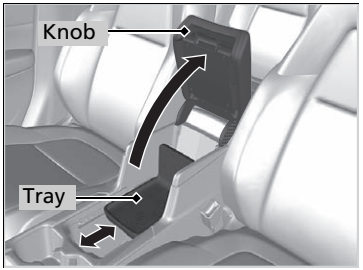
⚠WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

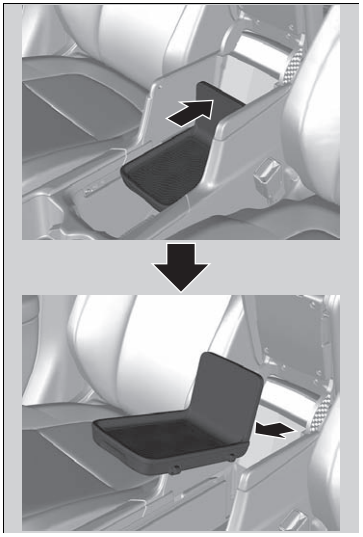
Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Continued

■ Center Console Box



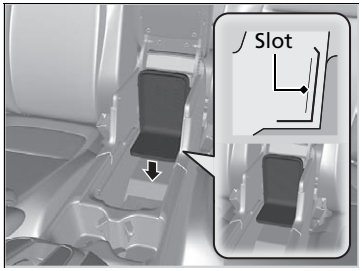
To open, pull the knob. You can change the position of the tray by sliding it forward or back.



■ Removing the tray

1. Slide the tray back.

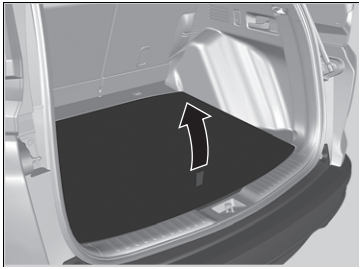
2. Lift the edge of the tray up slightly, then pull it out.



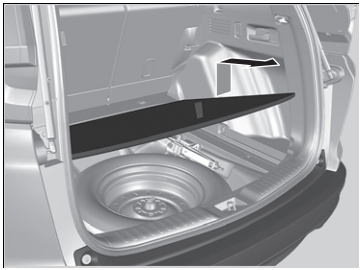
Storing the tray:
Line the tray up with the slots located at the rear section of the console box, and then push it down all the way until it is in the locked position.

Continued

■ Under-floor Storage Area



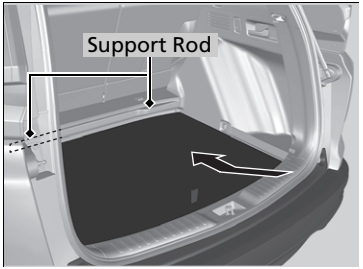
Pull the strap to open the cargo floor lid.



■ Storing items on the lid at the bottom position

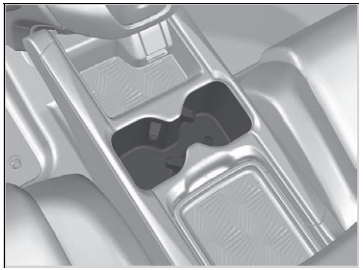
This is convenient when storing a tall item.

1. Pull the strap upwards to lift the lid.
2. Pull the lid towards you until it disengages from the support rods.



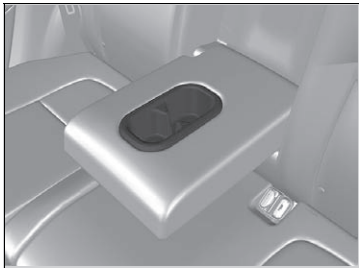
3. Push the far end of the lid down to the bottom under the support rod, then lower the other end.

■ Beverage Holders



■ Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.



■ Rear seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

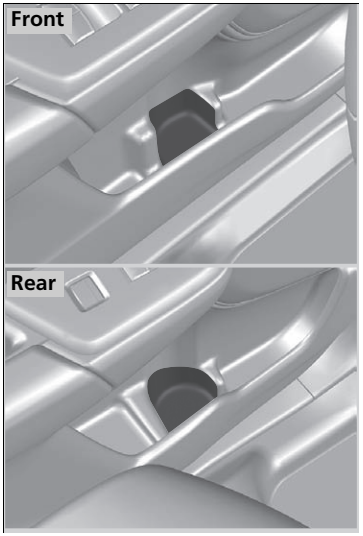
Beverage Holders

NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

Continued

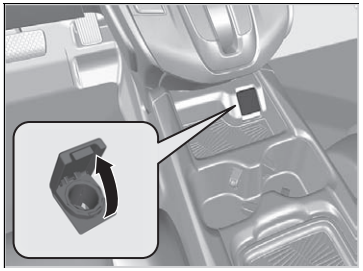


■ **Door side beverage holders**

Are located on the both of front and rear door side pockets.

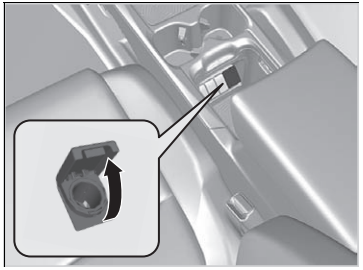
■ Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the ignition switch is in ACCESSORY I or ON II*1.



■ Accessory power socket on the console panel

Open the cover to use it.



■ Accessory power socket in the console compartment

Open the console lid and the cover to use it.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

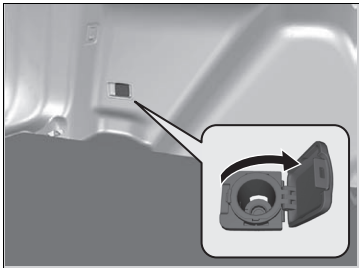
Accessory Power Sockets

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element.
This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts or less (15 amps).

To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.

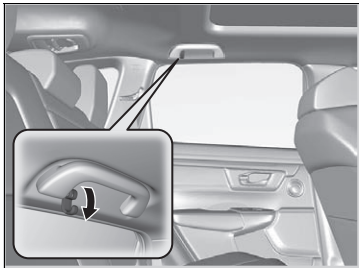


■ **Accessory power socket (cargo area)*1**

Open the cover to use it.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

Coat Hook

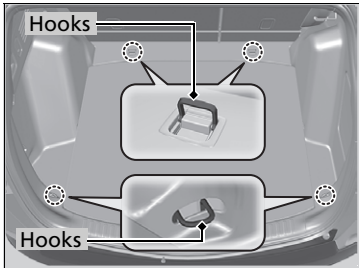


There is a coat hook on the rear left grab handle. Pull it down to use it.

Coat Hook

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

Tie-down Anchors



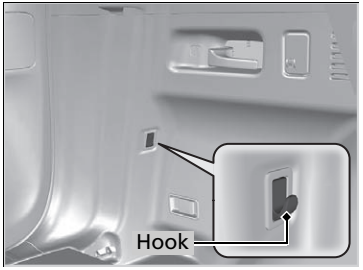
The tie-down anchors on the cargo area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

Tie-down Anchors

Do not let anyone access items in the cargo area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Continued

■ Cargo Hooks



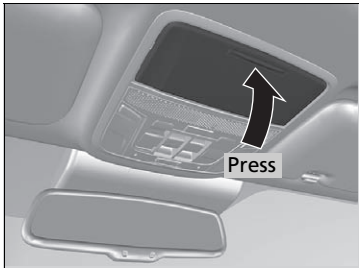
The cargo hooks on the driver's side of the cargo area can be used to hang a light items.

Cargo Hooks

NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 6 lbs (3 kg) on the side cargo hooks. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hooks.

■ Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, press and release the indent. To close, press it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.



■ Conversation mirror

The sunglasses holder comes with a mirror. Open the sunglasses holder fully, then push it back to the first detent.

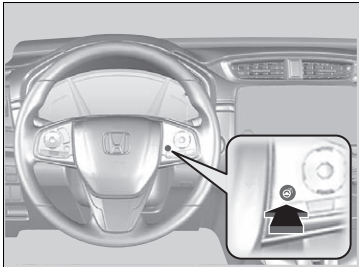
You can use the mirror to view the rear seats.

Sunglasses Holder

Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

Continued

Heated Steering Wheel*1



The power mode must be in ON to use the heated steering wheel.

Press the button on the right side of the steering wheel.

When a comfortable temperature is reached, press the button again to turn it off.

The heated steering wheel is turned off every time you start the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

Heated Steering Wheel*1

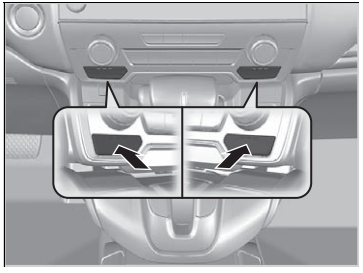
Do not use the heated steering wheel continuously when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

Front Seat Heaters*



The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters.



Press the seat heater button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is turn on after it is turned off, the previous setting of seat heaters is maintained.

Front Seat Heaters*

⚠WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

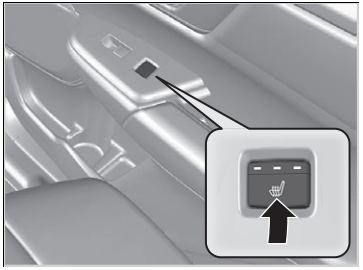
Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the front seat heater will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the seat heater shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Rear Seat Heaters*1



There is no heater in the rear center seating position.
Press the seat heater button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

The rear seat heaters is turned off every time you start the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

Rear Seat Heaters*1

⚠WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

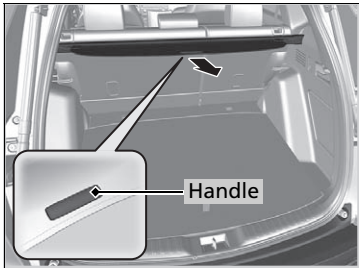
Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

The rear seat heater is turned off every time you start the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting of front seat heaters is maintained.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

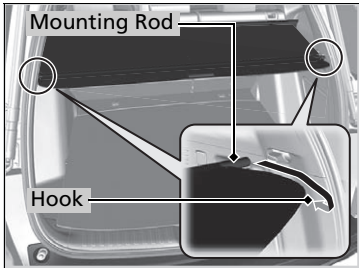
Rear Cargo Cover*



The rear cargo cover can be used to conceal items in the cargo area and protect them from direct sunlight.

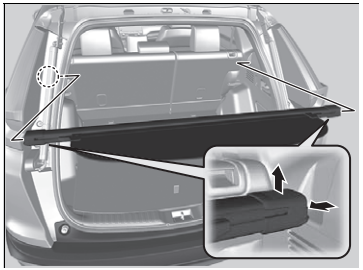
■ To extend:

Slightly lift up on the handle at the center edge of the cover to unhook each end, then pull the cover rearward and clip the mounting rods in the hooks at both sides of the tailgate opening.



■ To retract:

Slip the rods out of the hooks, then slowly roll it back until it is completely retracted.



■ To remove:

Push either end of the housing inward, then lift it out of its position.

Rear Cargo Cover*

Do not let anyone access items in the cargo area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Do not stack objects higher than the top of the seat in the cargo area. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a sudden stop.

To prevent rear cargo cover damage:
- Do not place items on the rear cargo cover.
- Do not put weight on the rear cargo cover.

Be sure that each mounting rod sets in its respective retention groove when you retract the rear cargo cover. If they are not set in the grooves, the rods may rattle as they contact the surrounding surfaces.

* Not available on all models

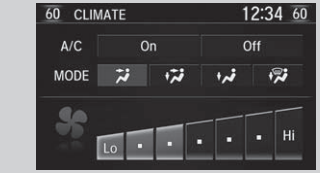
Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

Models without SYNC button



Models with SYNC button





Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.

Models without SYNC button

2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.

Models with SYNC button

2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side control dial.

3. Press the ON/OFF (on/off) button to cancel.

Using Automatic Climate Control

Press the **CLIMATE** button to display **A/C**, **MODE**, fan control information on the audio/information screen to operate manually. Select icon to turn on or off **A/C**, change the vent mode, or change the fan speed.

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the ON/OFF button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

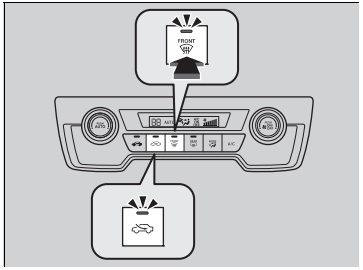
■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

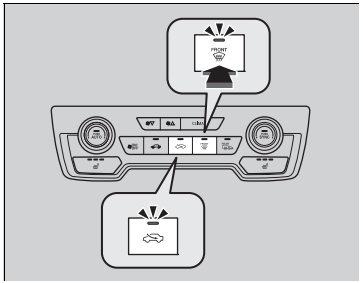
Press the (recirculation) or (fresh air) button to switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator on): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

■ Defrosting the Windshield and Windows





Pressing the FRONT (windshield defroster) button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the FRONT button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

Defrosting the Windshield and Windows

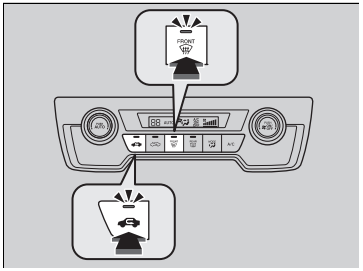
For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

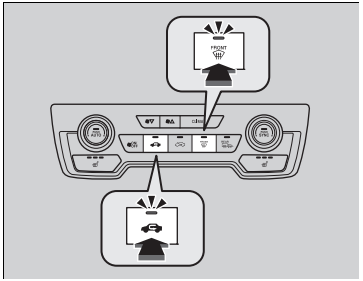
Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windshield, the outside of the windshield may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

Continued

■ To rapidly defrost the windows



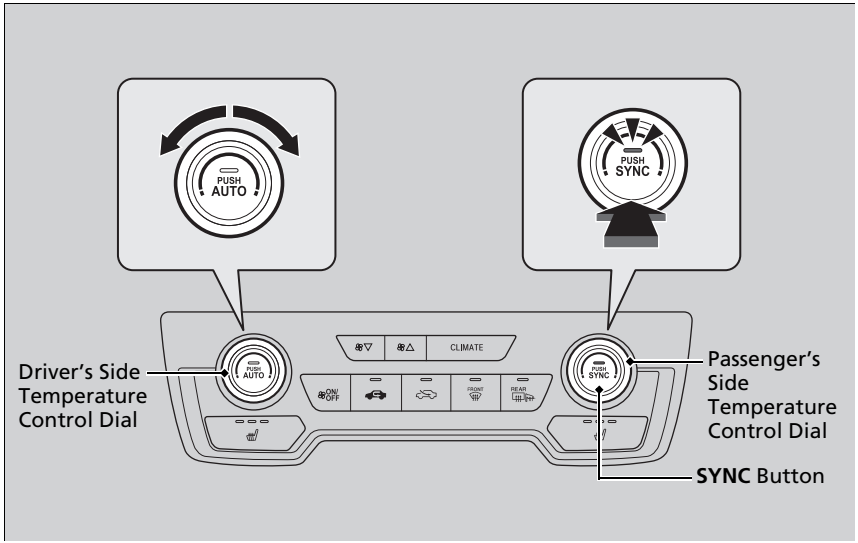


1. Press the FRONT button.
2. Press the button.

To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Synchronization Mode*



You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.

▶ The system switches to synchronization mode.

2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

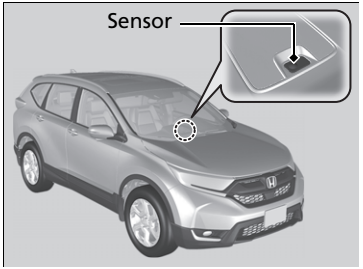
Press the **SYNC** button to return to dual mode.

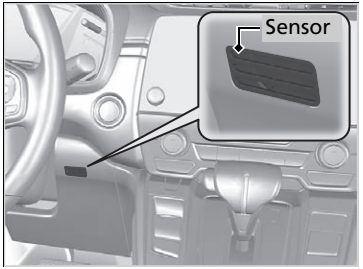
Synchronization Mode*

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

* Not available on all models

Automatic Climate Control Sensors





The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.

Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

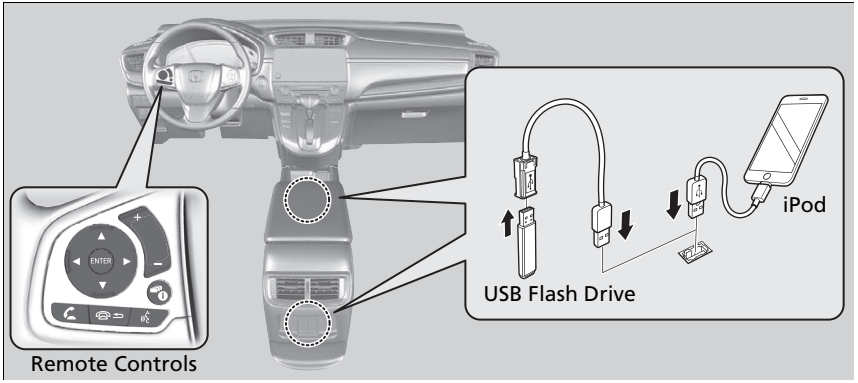
Audio System
About Your Audio System 230
USB Port(s) 231
Audio System Theft Protection 232
Audio Remote Controls 233
Models with color audio system
Audio System Basic Operation
Audio/Information Screen 238
Adjusting the Sound 242
Display Setup 243
Playing AM/FM Radio 244
Playing an iPod 246
Playing Pandora® 249
Playing a USB Flash Drive 251
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 254
Siri® Eyes Free 257
Models with Display Audio
Audio System Basic Operation
Audio/Information Screen 259
Adjusting the Sound 280
Display Setup 281
Voice Control Operation 283
Playing AM/FM Radio 287
Playing SiriusXM® Radio* 291
Playing an iPod 298
Song By Voice™ (SBV) 301
Playing Pandora®* 305
Playing a USB Flash Drive 307
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 310
HondaLink® 312
Wi-Fi Connection 317
Siri® Eyes Free 319
Apple CarPlay™ 320
Android Auto™ 323
Audio Error Messages 327
General Information on the Audio System 332
Customized Features 349
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver* .. 382
***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** 385, 408
Compass* 442

* Not available on all models

About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio and SiriusXM® Radio service*. It can also play USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone and *Bluetooth*® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface*.



About Your Audio System

SiriusXM® Radio* is available on a subscription basis only. For more information on SiriusXM® Radio*, contact a dealer.

General Information on the Audio System
P. 332

SiriusXM® Radio* is available in the United States and Canada, except Hawaii, Alaska, and Puerto Rico.

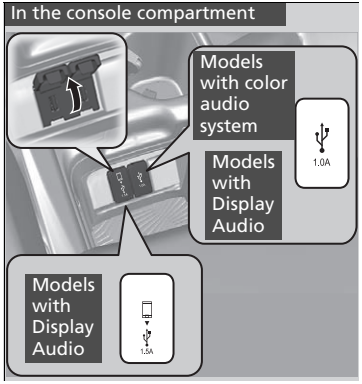
SiriusXM®* is a registered trademark of SiriusXM Radio, Inc.

iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

* Not available on all models

USB Port(s)



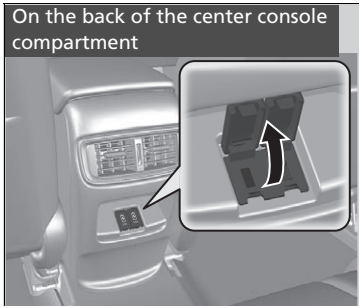
Install the iPod USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

▶ The USB port (1.0A) is for playing audio files on a USB flash drive, connecting a cellular phone, and charging devices.

Models with Display Audio

▶ The USB port (1.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay™ or Android Auto™.

▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.



■ On the back of the center console compartment*

The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

USB Port(s)

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognize the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit *www.apple.com/ipod*.

The USB port can supply up to 1.0A/1.5A/2.5A of power. It does not output 1.0A/1.5A/2.5A unless the device requests.
For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.
Turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY I or ON II*1 first.

USB Port (2.5A)

This port is for battery charge only. You cannot play music even if you have connected a music player to it.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

Audio System Theft Protection

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

■ Reactivating the audio system

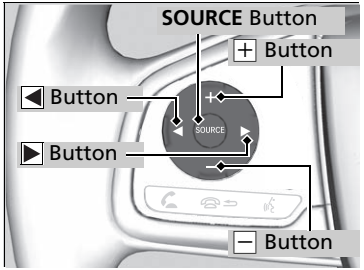
1. Turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognize the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Audio Remote Controls

Models with color audio system

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving.



SOURCE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:
FM1→FM2→AM→USB/iPod→Pandora®→*Bluetooth*® Audio

+ − (Volume) Buttons

Press +: To increase the volume.
Press −: To decrease the volume.

◀ ▶ Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  Press ▶: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press ◀: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold ▶: To select the next station with strong reception.
  Press and hold ◀: To select the previous station with strong reception.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  Press ▶: To skip to the next song.
  Press ◀: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio*
  Press and hold ▶: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold ◀: To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to Pandora®
  Press ▶: To skip to the next track.
  Press and hold ▶: To select the next station.
  Press and hold ◀: To select the previous station.

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

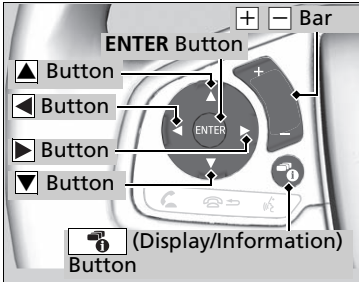
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Models with Display Audio

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.



▲ ▼ Buttons

Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through the audio mode as follows:

FM→AM→SiriusXM®*→USB→iPod →*Bluetooth*® Audio→Pandora®*→Apps* →Audio Apps*

ENTER Button

- When listening to the radio and SiriusXM®*

1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a preset, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to a USB flash drive

1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a folder.
3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of tracks in that folder.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Press the (Hang-up/back) button to go back to the previous command or cancel a command.

Press the (Display/information) button to switch display.

Switching the Display P. 259

 * Not available on all models

• When listening to an iPod

1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a category.

3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.

▶ Press **ENTER** and press ▲ or ▼ repeatedly until the desired mode you want to listen to is displayed.

• When listening to Pandora®*

1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the station list.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.

• When listening to *Bluetooth*® Audio

1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the track list.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

+ − (Volume) Bar

Press +: To increase the volume.

Press −: To decrease the volume.

* Not available on all models

Continued

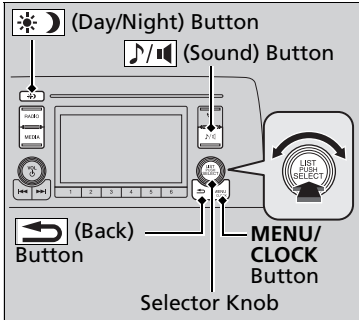
◀ ▶ Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  Press ▶: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press ◀: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold ▶: To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold ◀: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  Press ▶: To skip to the next song.
  Press ◀: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  Press and hold ▶: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold ◀: To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to Pandora®*
  Press ▶: To skip to the next track.
  Press and hold ▶: To select the next station.
  Press and hold ◀: To select the previous station.

 * Not available on all models

Models with color audio system

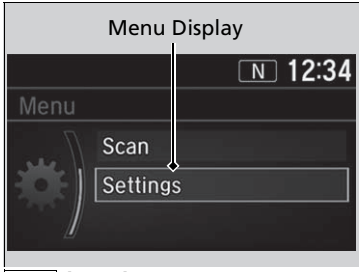
To use the audio system, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY I or ON II.



Use the selector knob or **MENU/CLOCK** button to access some audio functions.

Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

Selector knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.



MENU/CLOCK button: Press to select any mode.
The available modes include wallpaper, display, clock, language setup, and play modes. Play mode choices include scan, random, repeat, and so on.

(Back) button: Press to go back to the previous display.
(Sound) button: Press to select the sound setting mode.
(Day/Night) button: Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.
Press the button, then adjust the brightness using .

► Each time you press the button, the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.
Rotate to select.
Press to enter.

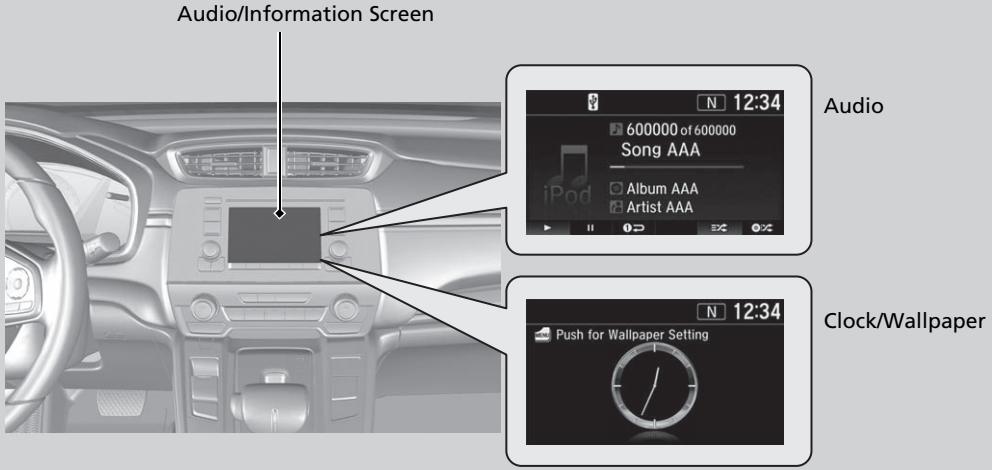
Menu Items
- **Adjust Clock** P. 130
- **Wallpaper Setup** P. 240
- **Display Setup** P. 243
- **Scan** P. 245, 253
- **Play Mode** P. 248, 253
- **RDS Settings** P. 245
- **Bluetooth** P. 254

Press the **SOURCE**, +, −, ◀ or ▶ button on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.
- **Audio Remote Controls** P. 233

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

■ Switching the Display



■ **Audio**
Shows the current audio information.

■ **Clock/Wallpaper**
Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

■ **Change display**
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Settings**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Display Change**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select **Wallpaper**, then press ⊙.
▶ If you want to return to the audio/information screen, select **Audio**.

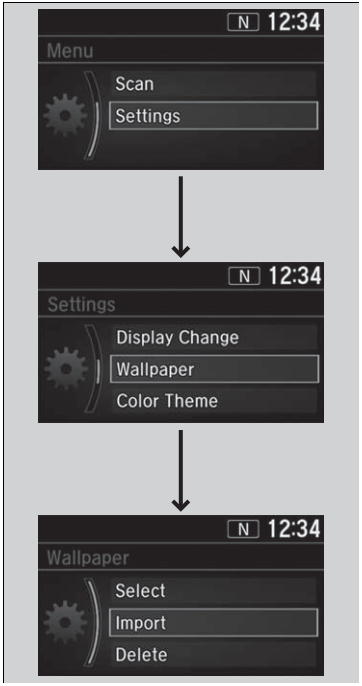
Continued

■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
   USB Port(s) P. 231
2. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Settings**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select **Wallpaper**, then press ⊙.
5. Rotate ⟲ to select **Import**, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Rotate ⟲ to select a desired picture, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The selected picture is displayed.
7. Press ⊙ to save the picture.
8. Press ⊙ to select **OK**.
9. Rotate ⟲ to select a location to save the picture, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 480 × 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the error message appears.
- The wallpaper setup is limited while driving.

■ **Select wallpaper**

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Select**, then press .
▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate to select a desired wallpaper, then press .

■ **To view wallpaper once it is set**

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Display Change**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
5. Press the (Back) button until the top screen is displayed.

■ **Delete wallpaper**

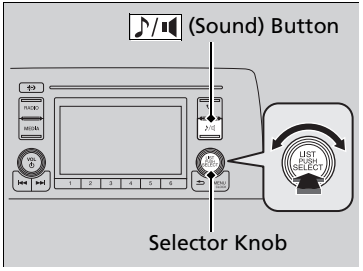
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete**, then press .
▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
6. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

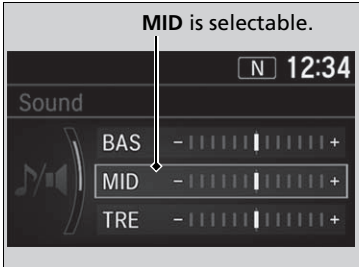
Wallpaper Setup

To go back to the previous screen, press the (Back) button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

Adjusting the Sound





Press the (sound) button, and rotate to scroll through the following choices:

- **BAS** — Bass
- **MID** — Middle
- **TRE** — Treble
- **FAD** — Fader
- **BAL** — Balance
- **SVC** — Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation

Rotate to adjust the sound setting, then press .

Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information screen.

Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Display Adjustment**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Brightness**, then press .
5. Rotate to adjust the setting, then press .

Changing the Screen's Color Theme

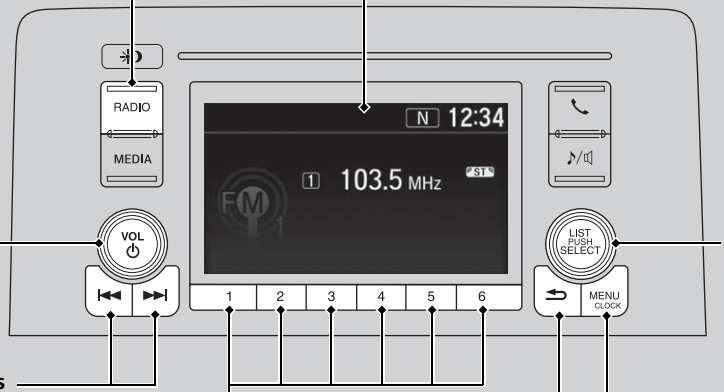


1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Color Theme**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the setting you want, then press .

Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

Playing AM/FM Radio



RADIO Button
Press to select a band.

Audio/Information Screen

VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
Press ⏮ or ⏭ to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

Preset Buttons (1-6)
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.

To listen to a stored station, select a band, then press the preset button.

Selector Knob
Turn to tune the radio frequency.
Press, and then turn to select an item. After that, press again to make your selection.

MENU/CLOCK Button
Press to display the menu items.

⮌ (Back) Button
Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.

■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Press ⏻ while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate ↶ to select the station, then press ⏻.

■ Update List

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Press ⏻ while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate ↶ to select **Update List**, then press ⏻.

■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ↶ to select **Settings**, then press ⏻.
3. Rotate ↶ to select **RDS Settings**, then press ⏻.
4. Rotate ↶ to select **Radio Text**, then press ⏻.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ↶ to select **Scan**, then press ⏻.

To turn off scan, press ⏻.

Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory. FM1 and FM2 let you store 6 stations each.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 233

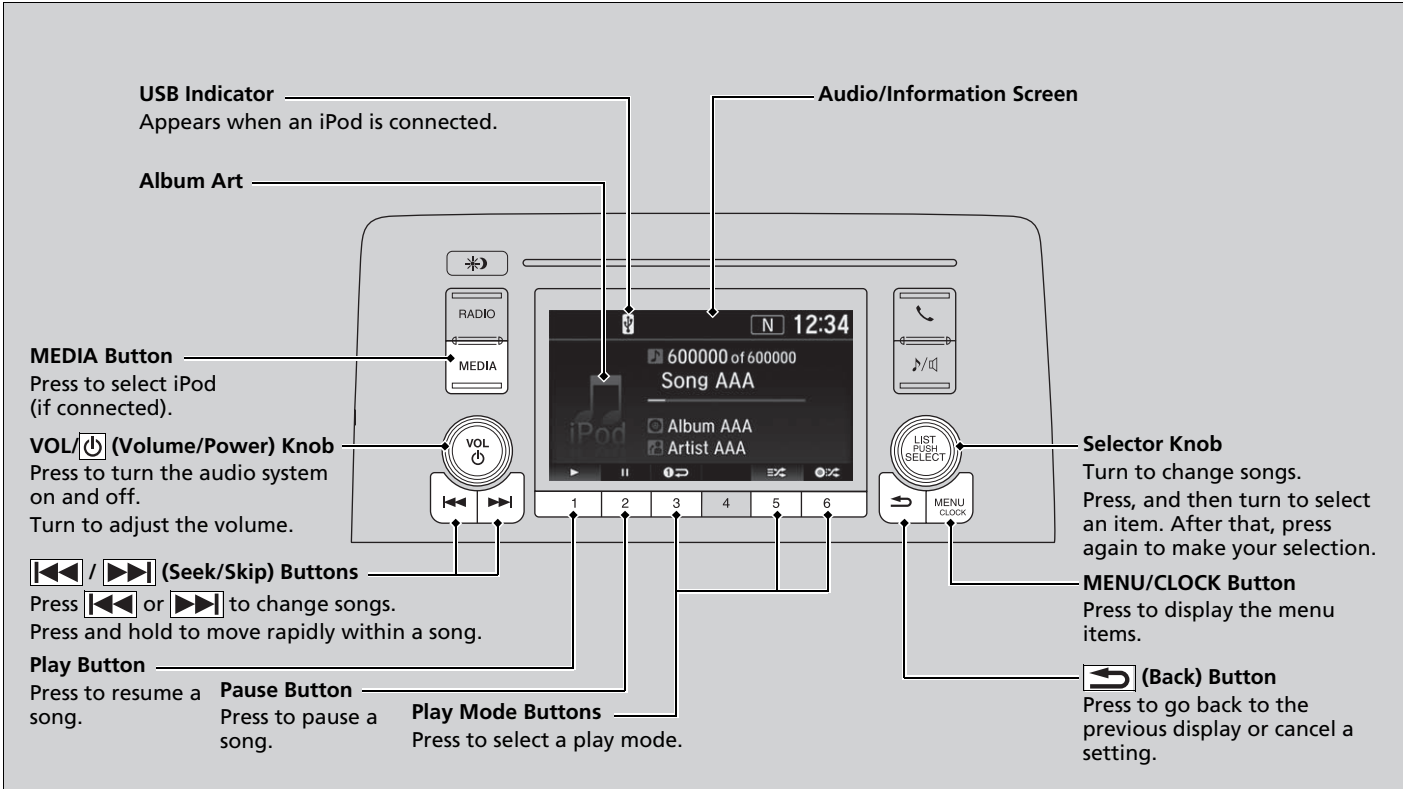
Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

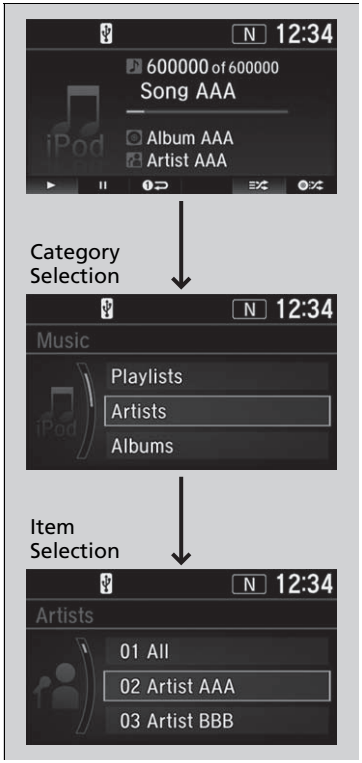
Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

USB Port(s) P. 231



How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display the iPod music list.

2. Rotate to select a category.

3. Press to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate to select an item, then press .
▶ Press and rotate repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

Continued

Playing an iPod

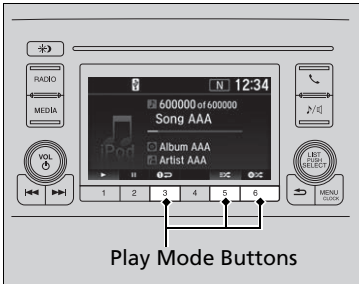
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➡ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 327

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or podcasts, audiobooks, and composers) in random order.

Shuffle All: Plays all available songs in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, podcasts, audiobooks, and composers) in random order.

Repeat One Track: Repeats the current song.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

Rotate to select a mode, then press .

To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

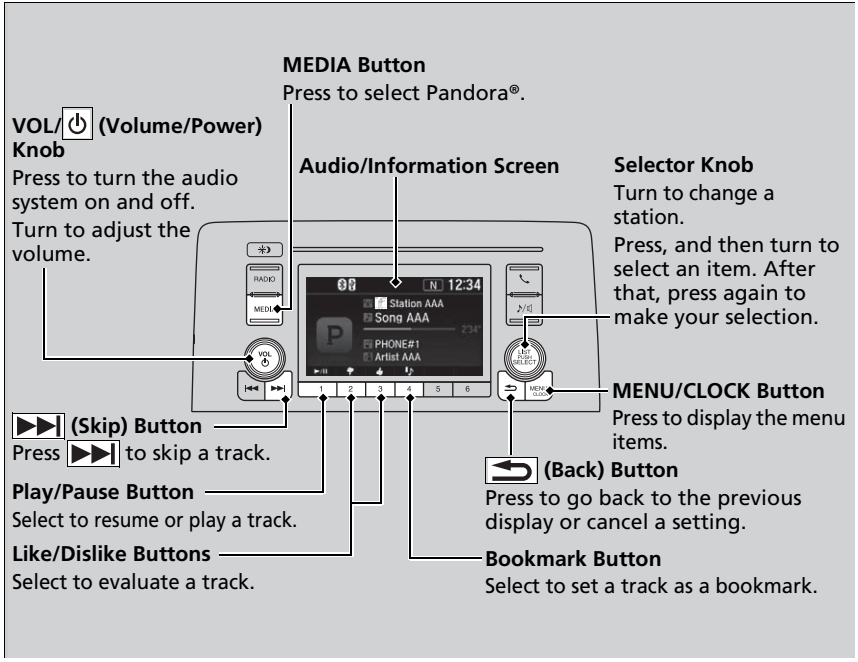
Playing Pandora®

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from the Pandora® app on a compatible smartphone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system, or with an iPhone, you can connect using your USB cable to the USB port.

Phone Setup P. 391

USB Port(s) P. 231



Playing Pandora®

Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission. Pandora is only available in certain countries. Visit the Pandora website for more information.

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528-7876.

To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit *www.pandora.com*. for more information.

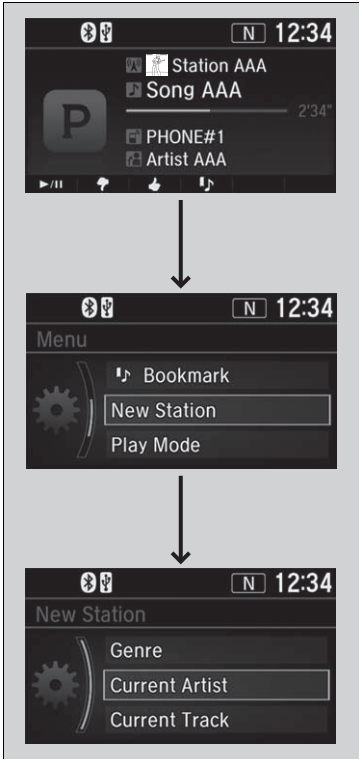
Pandora® is free, personalized radio that plays music and comedy you'll love. Just start with the name of one of your favorite artists, tracks, comedians or composers and Pandora® will create a custom station that plays similar tracks. Pandora® also features hundreds of genre stations ranging from Dubstep to Smooth Jazz to Power Workout.

If you cannot operate Pandora® through the audio system, it may be streaming through *Bluetooth*® Audio. Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

Continued

How to Create a Station

You can create a station when playing Pandora®.



1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

2. Rotate ⟲ to select **New Station**, then press ⊙.

3. Rotate ⟲ to select an item, then press ⊙.
▶ You can select **Genre**, **Current Artist**, or **Current Track**.

How to Create a Station

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.
➡ **Pandora®*** P. 329

Pandora® may limit the total number of skips allowed on the service. If you dislike a track after the skip limit has been reached, your feedback will be saved but the current track will continue to play.

To change stations, press ⊙ on the main Pandora® screen, and rotate ⊙ to select **Station List**, and then select a new station.

Features

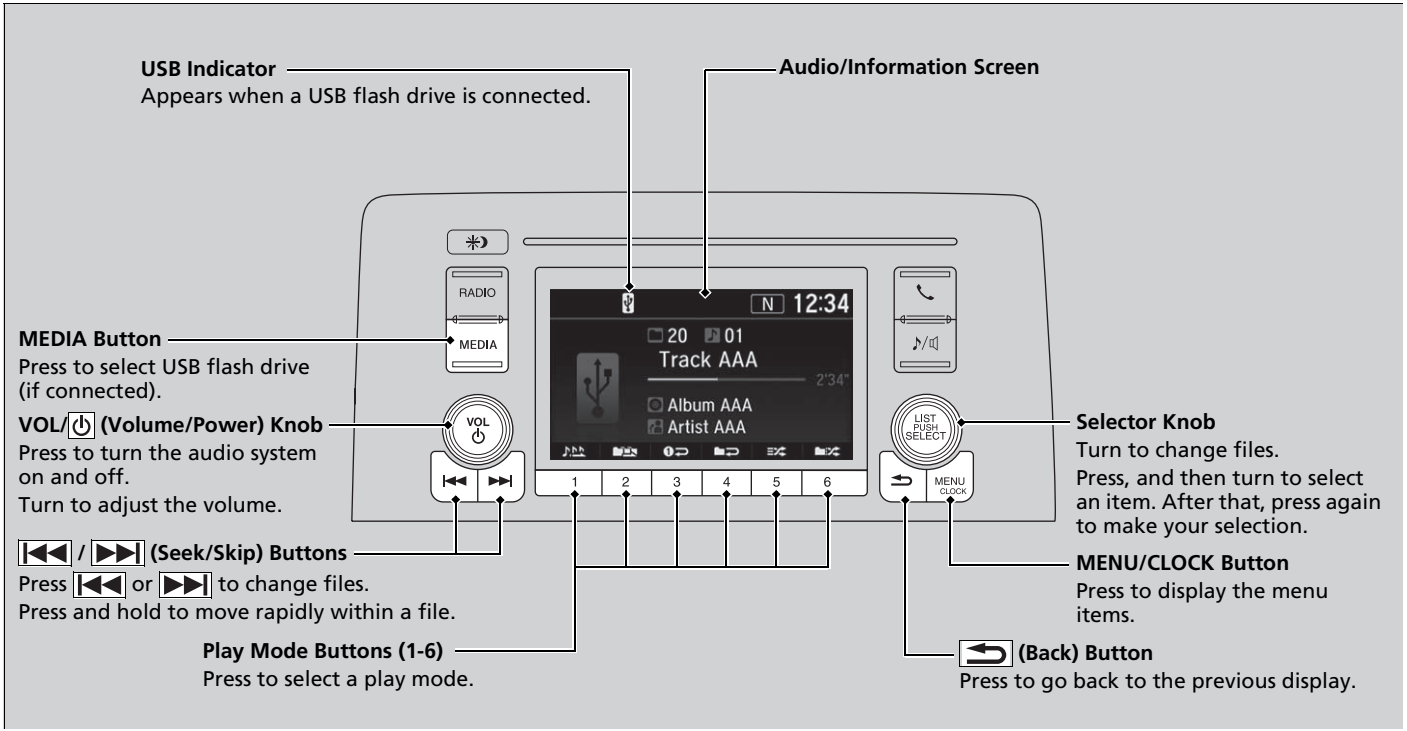
* Not available on all models

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC*1 or WAV format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

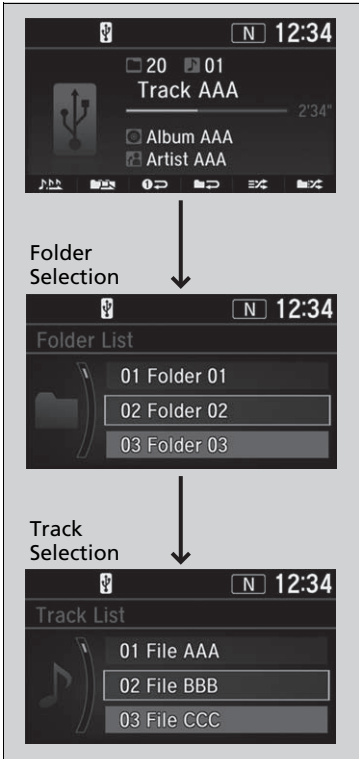
USB Port(s) P. 231



*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

Continued

How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display a folder list.

2. Rotate to select a folder.

3. Press to display a list of files in that folder.

4. Rotate to select a file, then press .

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

➡ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 332

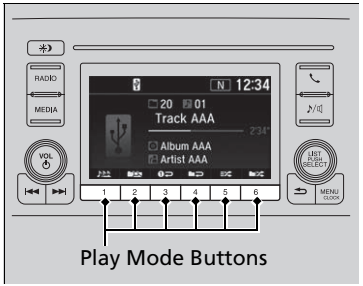
Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➡ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 327

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a file.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Repeat

Repeat One Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat One Track: Repeats the current file.

Random

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All: Plays all files in random order.

Scan

Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

Rotate to select a mode, then press .

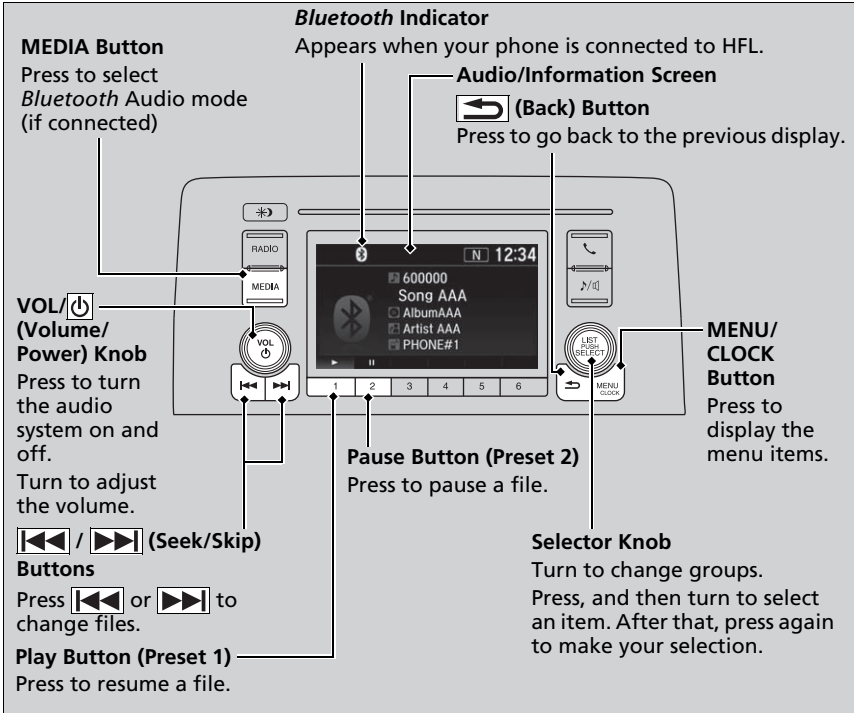
To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

Phone Setup P. 391



Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. For a list of compatible phones:

- U.S.: Visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.

In some states, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

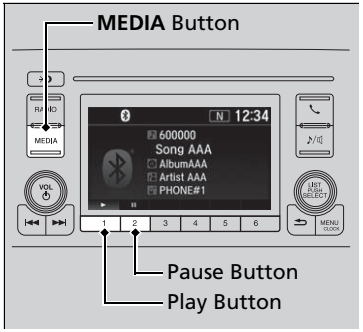
Only one phone can be used with HFL at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFL.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button until the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode is selected.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

To pause or resume a file

Press the **Play** or **Pause** button to select a mode.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

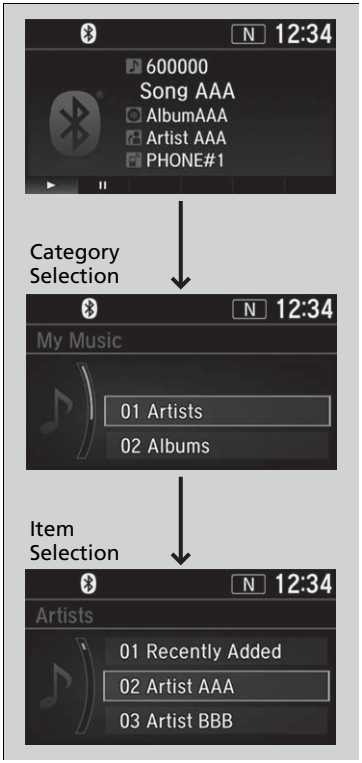
The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the USB port, you may need to press the **MEDIA** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

Continued

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob



1. Press ⏏ to display the music search list.

2. Rotate ⟳ to select a category.

3. Press ⏏ to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate ⟳ to select an item, then press ⏏.
▶ Press ⏏ and rotate ⟳ repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the categories may not be displayed.

Siri® Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

Phone Setup P. 391

Using Siri® Eyes Free

(Hang-up/back) Button
Press to deactivate Siri® Eyes Free.



Appears when Siri is activated in Siri® Eyes Free

While in Siri® Eyes Free:
The display remains the same. No feedback or commands appear.

(Talk) Button
Press and hold until the display changes as shown.

Siri® Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri® Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

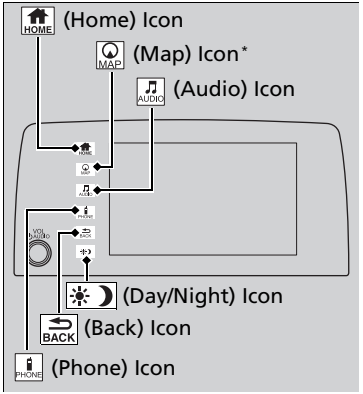
Using Siri® Eyes Free

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

This audio system cannot operate the audio functions by using Siri® Eyes Free.

Models with Display Audio

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



(Home): Select to go to the home screen.
Switching the Display P. 259

(Map)*: Select to display the map screen.

(Audio): Select to display the audio screen.

(Phone): Select to display the phone screen.

(Back): Select to go back to the previous screen when the icon is illuminated.



(Day/Night): Select to change the audio/information screen brightness.
Select (Day/Night) once and select − or + to make an adjustment.

▶ Each time you select (Day/Night), the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

Audio System Basic Operation

Audio Menu Items
- **Station List** P. 288, 290
- **Music Search List** P. 299, 308
- **Scan** P. 289, 297, 309
- **Play Mode** P. 300, 309

Features

* Not available on all models

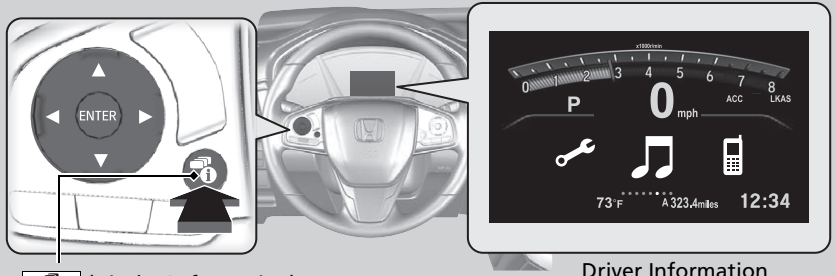
Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

■ Switching the Display

■ Using the (display/information) button

Press the (display/information) button to change the display.



(Display/Information) Button

Driver Information Interface

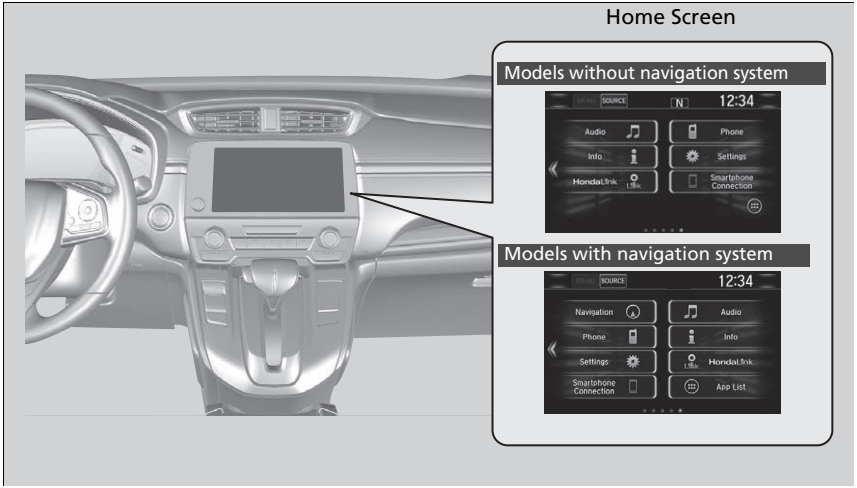
▶Using the (display/information) button

You can edit, add, and delete the contents shown on the driver information interface.

➔ **Customizing the Meter** P. 264

Continued

■ Using the audio/information screen



Select HOME to go to the home screen.
Select **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation***, **HondaLink**, **Smartphone Connection** (**Apple CarPlay**, **Android Auto**), **App List***/ (APPS icon)*, or **Instrument Panel**.

■ Phone

Displays the HFL information.

➡ ***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** P. 408

Using the audio/information screen

Touchscreen operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped or use voice commands.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 349

* Not available on all models

■ Info

Displays **Trip Computer**, **Voice Info**, **Clock/Wallpaper**, or **System/Device Information**. Select **MENU** on the **Info Menu** screen to see all available options: **Trip Computer**, **Voice Info**, **Clock/Wallpaper** and **System/Device Information**.

Trip Computer:

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **History of Trip A** tab: Displays information for the three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A.
  To delete the history manually, select **Delete history** on the **History of Trip A** tab. The confirmation message appears on the screen, then select **Yes**.

Voice Info: Displays the All Commands list.

Clock/Wallpaper: Displays the clock and wallpaper.

System/Device Information:

- **System Info**: Displays the software version of the audio system.
- **USB Info**: Displays the memory usage of the USB device.

■ Audio

Displays the current audio information.

■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 349

■ Navigation*

Displays the navigation screen.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ HondaLink

Displays the HondaLink® screen.

➔ **HondaLink®** P. 312

■ Smartphone Connection

Displays the Apple CarPlay™ or Android Auto™.

➔ **Apple CarPlay™** P. 320
➔ **Android Auto™** P. 323

■ App List ( )

Adds or removes apps or widgets on the home screen.

➔ **Home Screen** P. 270

■ Instrument Panel

Selects from three customizable settings for the driver information interface.

Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout



1. Select HOME.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **OK**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

Continued

■ Customizing the Meter

You can edit, add, or delete the meter contents on the driver information interface.



1. HOME
2. **Settings**
3. **System**
4. **Configuration of Instrument Panel**

Customizing the Meter

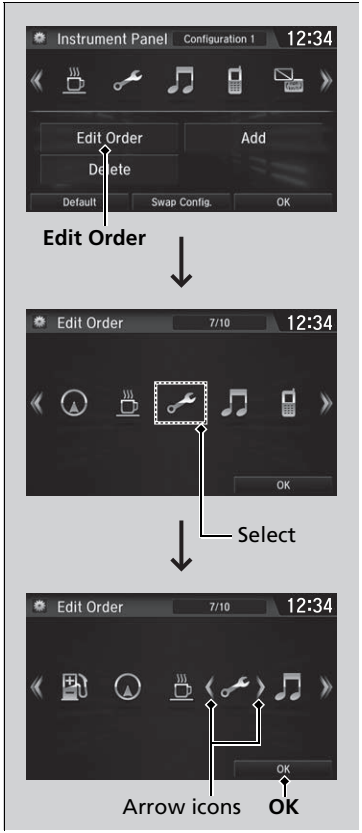
You can store up to three customized configurations. To select or customize a configuration, select **Swap Config.**.

When you select **Swap Config.** during customization, the settings you changed will be saved.

When you select BACK during customization, the settings you changed will not be saved and you will be returned to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

■ Editing order

To change the order of the icons on the driver information interface, first select:



1. Edit Order

2. Select the icon you want to move.
▶ You will see arrows on both sides of the selected icon.

3. Select the left or right arrow repeatedly to move the icon to your desired position.

4. Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

Editing order

You can use an alternative method to change the order of the icons. First select:

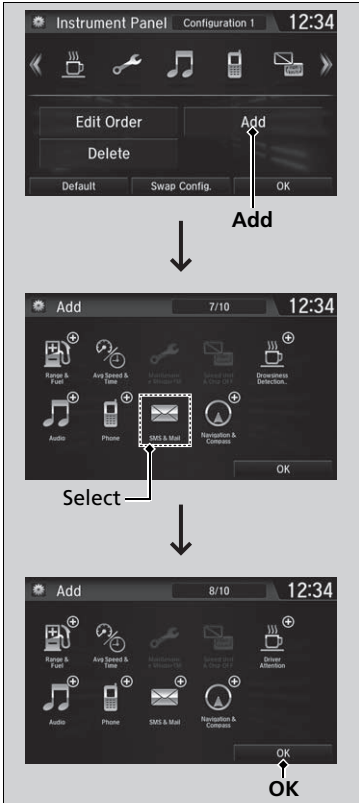
1. **Edit Order**
2. Select and hold the icon you want to move.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **OK**.

▶The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

Continued

■ Adding contents

You can add icons to the driver information interface. To add icons, first select:



1. Add

2. Select an icon you want to add.
▶ You will see a plus mark on the upper right hand corner of the selected icon.

3. Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

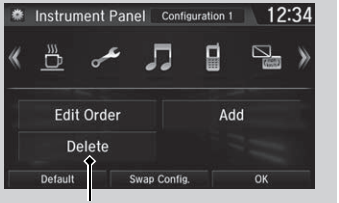
Adding contents

Icons that are grayed out cannot be selected.

If an icon has a plus mark in the upper-right corner, it means that the icon has already been added.

■ Deleting contents

To delete contents on the driver information interface, first select:



1. Delete



2. Select an icon you want to delete.
▶ The icon with an X on the upper right hand corner can be deleted.



3. Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

Deleting contents

You can also delete contents by selecting:
1. **Delete** or **Edit Order**
2. Select and hold an icon you want to delete.
3. Drag and drop the icon to the trash icon.
4. Select **OK**.

▶The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

Continued

■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.





1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
   USB Port(s) P. 231
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, select **Next**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
5. Select **Add New**.
   ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Select a desired picture.
   ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

Wallpaper Setup

The wallpaper you set up on **Clock/Wallpaper Type** cannot be displayed on the driver information interface.

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

1. Select HOME.
2. Select ⟪.
3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Change wallpaper**.
5. Select **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, or **Wallpapers**.

■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, select **Next**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
   ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
   ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Set**.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

■ To view wallpaper once it is set

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Info**.
3. Select **MENU**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper**.

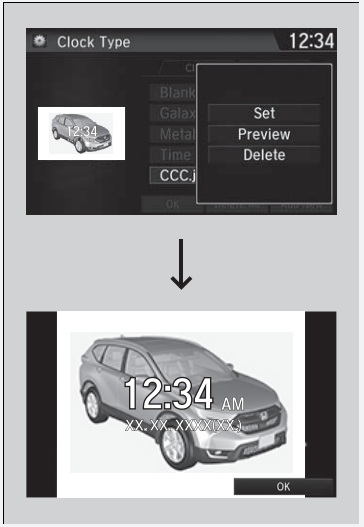
■ Delete wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, select **Next**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
   ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
   ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Delete**.
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to delete completely.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

Continued

Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.



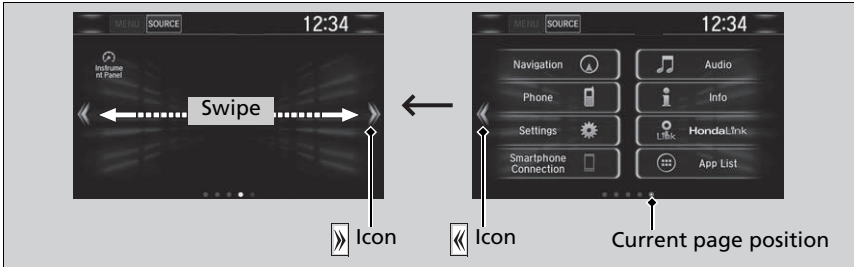
To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or select BACK.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**.

■ Home Screen

■ To change to a next screen



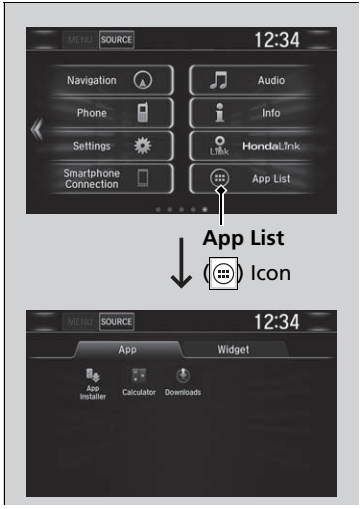
Selecting 《 or 》, or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

Home Screen

The home screen has 5 pages (fixed). You cannot add any more pages.

Select HOME to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

■ To use apps or widgets



1. Select HOME.
2. Select **App List** ( ).
   ▶ The apps screen appears.
3. Select the app or widget you want to use.

Preinstall app list:

- **Calculator**: Displays Calculator.
- **Downloads**[*1]: Displays the data downloaded from the web browser and so on.
- **App Installer**: Check with a Honda dealer for apps that are available for installation.

*1: Downloads app cannot be used because there is no Browser function in this system.

To use apps or widgets

Select and hold a selected app or widget to add that app's or widget's shortcut on the home screen.

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.
Defaulting All the Settings P. 381

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.
Defaulting All the Settings P. 381

In case those apps still do not startup normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact an authorized Honda dealer.

Do not install apps other than those confirmed by a Honda dealer. Installation of unauthorized apps may introduce data corruption risks to your vehicle's information and your privacy.

You can delete user installed apps by the following procedure.

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detail Information**.
6. Select an App that you want to delete.
7. Select **Delete**.

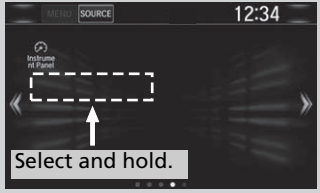
Pre-installed apps cannot be deleted.

Continued

■ To add app or widget icons on the home screen

App or widget icons can be added on the home screen.



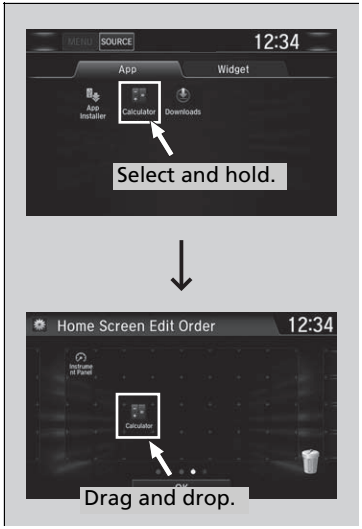




1. Select HOME.
2. Select ⟪.

3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

4. Select **Add App** or **Add Widget**.
▶ The apps/widget screen appears.



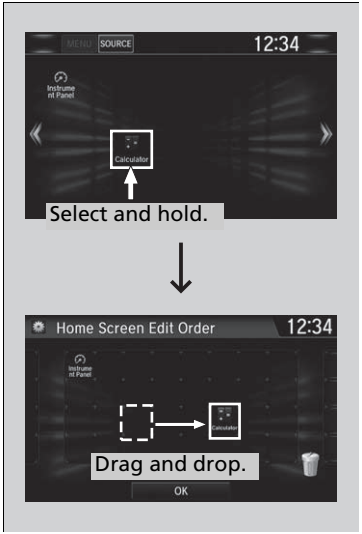
5. Select and hold an app or widget icon you want to add.
▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.

6. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
7. Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

Continued

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.
▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.

2. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.

3. Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

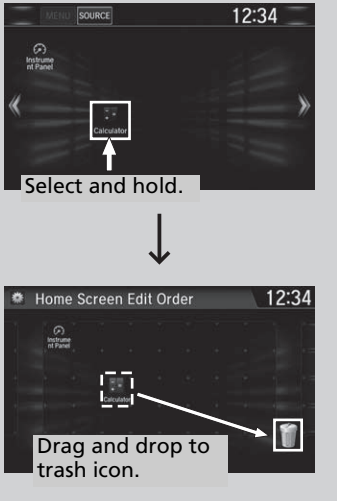
To move icons on the home screen

You can also move the **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation***, **HondaLink**, **Smartphone Connection**, **App List** ( ), and **Instrument Panel** icons in the same manner.

* Not available on all models

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.
▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.

2. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the trash icon.
▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.

3. Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To remove icons on the home screen

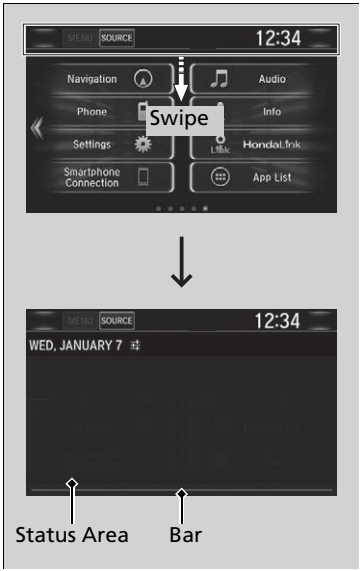
You cannot delete the **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation***, **HondaLink**, **Smartphone Connection**, **App List** (), and **Instrument Panel** icons.

Apps or widgets will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Status Area



1. Swipe the upper area of the screen.
▶ The status area appears.

2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Select BACK or swipe up the bottom bar to close the area.

Changing the Screen Interface

You can change the screen interface design.



1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Change Skin**.
6. Select **Next**, then a confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Changing the Screen Interface

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

1. Select HOME.
2. Select .
3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Change wallpaper**.
5. Select **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, or **Wallpapers**.

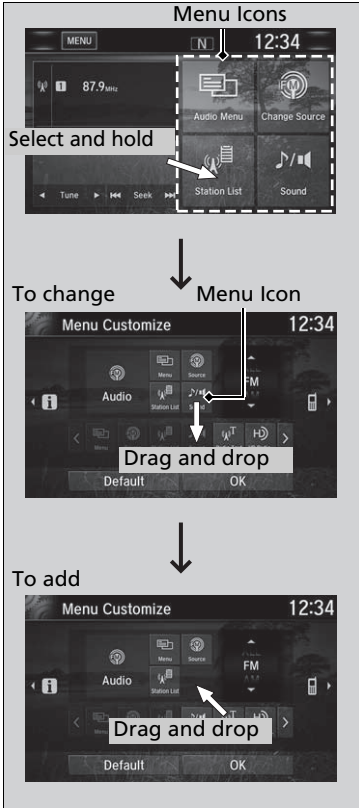
If you change the screen interface, some of the setting items will change.

Customized Features P. 349

Continued

■ Menu Customize

You can change menu icons on the right side of **Audio**, **Phone**, and **Info** screen.



1. Select any of the three icons (**Audio/Phone/Info**) on the screen, then select and hold the menu icon.
▶ Selecting the ◀ or ▶ icon, you can change **Audio**, **Phone**, or **Info** on the **Menu Customize** screen.

2. Select and hold the menu icon you want to change, then drag and drop the icon to the bottom.

3. Select and hold the menu icon you want to add, then drag and drop the icon above.
4. Select **OK**.

Menu Customize

You can also use the method below to change the menu icon:
Select **Settings**→**System**→**Home** tab→**Menu Icon Position**

Closing Apps

You can close specific apps running in the background on the system.



1. Select and hold HOME.
2. Select the **Active** tab.
   ▶ If you select the **Active/History** tab, you can close the apps that are currently running and delete the app activity history simultaneously.
3. Select an app you want to close.
4. Select **Clear**.
   ▶ The display will return to the app list.

Closing Apps

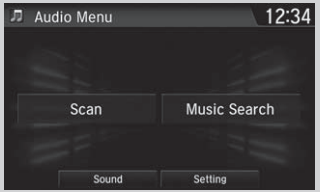
If you have a number of apps running in the background and something goes wrong with the audio system, some of those apps may not work properly. If this happens, close all the apps and re-launch the app/apps that you want to use.

To close all apps on the system, select **Clear All**, then **Yes**.

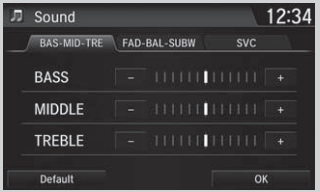
You cannot close the HondaLink® and Garmin* apps.

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Sound



1. Select AUDIO.
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Sound**.



Select a tab from the following choices:

- **BAS-MID-TRE:** Bass, Middle, Treble
- **FAD-BAL-SUBW:** Fader, Balance, Subwoofer
- **SVC:** Speed Volume Compensation

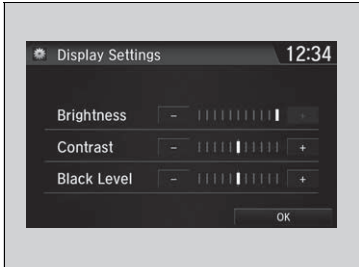
Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

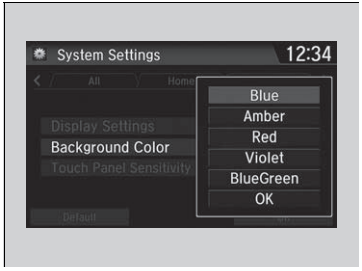
You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information screen.

Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Display Settings**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

Changing the Screen's Color Theme



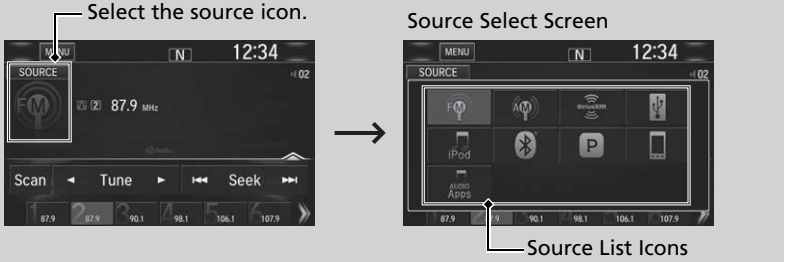
1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Background Color**.
6. Select **Next**, then select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

Continued

■ Selecting an Audio Source



Select the current source icon, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Selecting an Audio Source

If you startup preinstalled audio apps, AUDIO Apps is displayed on the screen.
These preinstalled apps cannot be displayed on the source select screen.
You can startup those audio apps from AUDIO Apps.

Voice Control Operation

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation.
The voice control system uses the (Talk) and (hang-up/back) buttons on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights on the ceiling.

Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:

- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.
  The system recognizes only certain commands.
  Available voice commands.
  ➡ **Voice Portal Screen** P. 284
- Close the windows and moonroof*.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone on the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

Voice Control Operation

When you press the button, a helpful prompt asks what you would like to do. Press and release the button again to bypass this prompt and give a command.

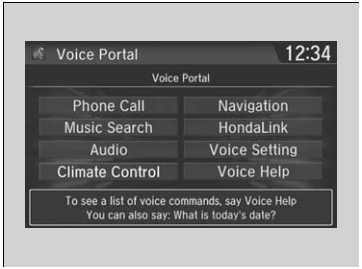
Voice Recognition

The voice control system can only be used from the driver's seat because the microphone unit removes noises from the front passenger's side.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Voice Portal Screen



When the (Talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.
For a complete list of commands, say "*Voice Help*" after the beep or select **Voice Help**.

You can see the list of commands in **Voice Info** on the **Info Menu** screen. Select **Info**, then select **MENU**.

The system only recognizes the commands on the following pages, at certain screens. Free form voice commands are not recognized.

■ Phone Call
This can be only used when the phone is connected. When the system recognizes the *Phone call* command, the screen will change to the voice recognition screen for phone commands.
- *Dial by number*
- *Call history*
- *Redial*
- *Call <Your Contact Name>*
- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call Police*
- *Call 911*

Phone Call commands are not available if using Apple CarPlay™.

■ Music Search
This can be only used when the iPod or USB device is connected.

■ Climate Control*1
When the system recognizes the *Climate Control* command, the screen will change the dedicated screen to the climate control voice recognition screen.

Climate Control Commands*1 P. 286

■ Audio*1
When the system recognizes the *Audio* command, the screen will change to the audio voice recognition screen.
- *Audio On/Off*
- *Radio FM/AM/SXM**
- *PANDORA**
- *iPod*
- *USB*
- *Other Sources*

Pandora®* cannot be used while Android Auto™ is active.

■ Navigation*1
The screen changes to the navigation screen.

Refer to the Navigation System Manual

■ HondaLink
This can be only used when the phone is connected.

■ Voice Setting
The screen changes to the **Voice Recog.** tab on the **System Settings** screen.

*1: Models with navigation system

* Not available on all models

■ **Voice Help**
You can see a list of the available commands on the screen.
- *Useful Commands*
- *Phone Commands*
- *Audio Commands*
- *Climate Control Commands*
- *General Commands*
- *Music Search Commands*
- *On Screen Commands*

■ Useful Commands

The system accepts these commands on the voice portal top screen.
- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call <Your contact Name>*
- *What time is it?*
- *What is today's date?*

■ Phone Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the phone.
- *Call by number*
- *Call by name*
- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call <Your contact Name>*

■ Audio Commands*1

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the audio.

■ **Radio FM Commands**
- *Radio tune to <87.7-107.9> FM*
- *Radio tune to <87.7 -107.9> HD <1-8> FM*
- *Radio FM preset # (#:1-12)*

■ **Radio AM Commands**
- *Radio tune to <530-1710> AM*
- *Radio AM preset # (#:1-6)*

■ **Radio SXM Commands***
- *SXM channel <1-999>*
- *SXM channel <channel name, category name, traffic and weather city name, sports team name>*
- *Radio SXM preset <1-12>*

■ **Pandora® Commands***
- *PANDORA play*

■ **iPod Commands**
- *iPod play*
- *iPod play track # (#:1-30)*
- *Music Search*
- *What album is this?*
- *What am I listening to?*

■ **USB Commands**
- *USB play*
- *USB play track # (#:1-30)*
- *Music Search*
- *What album is this?*
- *What am I listening to?*

■ ***Bluetooth*® audio Commands**
- *Bluetooth audio play*

NOTE:
Bluetooth® Audio commands may not work on some phones or *Bluetooth*® Audio devices.

*1: Models with navigation system

* Not available on all models

Continued

On Screen Commands

When **On Screen Commands** is selected, the explanation screen is displayed.

Music Search Commands

The system accepts these commands on the **Music Search** screen.

Using Song By Voice

Song By Voice™ is a feature that allows you to select music from your iPod or USB device using Voice Commands. To activate this mode, you must press the (Talk) button and say: "*Music search*".

Song By Voice Commands

- *What am I listening to?*
- *Who am I listening to?*
- *Who is this?*
- *What's playing?*
- *Who's playing?*
- *What album is this?*

Play Commands

- *Play artist <Name>*
- *Play track/song <Name>*
- *Play album <Name>*
- *Play genre/category <Name>*
- *Play playlist <Name>*
- *Play composer <Name>*

List Commands

- *List artist <Name>*
- *List album <Name>*
- *List genre/category <Name>*
- *List playlist <Name>*
- *List composer <Name>*

General Commands

- *What time is it?*
- *What is today's date?*

Climate Control Commands*1

- *Climate Control On*
- *Climate Control Off*
- *Fan Speed <1-7>*
- *Temperature max heat*
- *Temperature max cool*
- *Temperature <57-87> degrees (U.S.)*
- *Temperature <18-32> degrees (Canada)*
- *Defrost On*
- *Defrost Off*
- *Air conditioner On*
- *Air conditioner Off*
- *More*
- *Vent*
- *Dash and floor*
- *Floor vents*
- *Floor and Defrost*
- *Climate Control Automatic*
- *Fan Speed up/down*
- *Temperature up*
- *Temperature down*

NOTE:

These commands toggle the function on and off, so the command may not match your intended action.

*1: Models with navigation system

Playing AM/FM Radio



Driver Information Interface

Scan Icon
Select to scan each station with a strong signal.

Audio/Information Screen



(Audio) Icon
Select to display the audio screen.

Open/Close Icon[*1]
Displays/hides the detailed information.

Seek Icons
Select ▶▶| or |◀◀ to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power Audio) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

(Back) Icon
Select to go back to the previous display.

Tune Icons
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.

Preset Icons
Tune the preset radio frequency. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station. Select >> to display preset 7 onwards.

*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Continued

■ Preset Memory

To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

You can also store a preset station by the following procedure.
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.
1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the ▲ or ▼ button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 233

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into preset memory.

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD, HD Radio, and "Arc" logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or BACK.

Models with HD Radio™

HD Subchannel

Displays the subchannel list when an HD Radio™ station is selected while listening to an FM station.

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **HD Radio Subchannel**.
3. Select the channel number.

Continued

■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

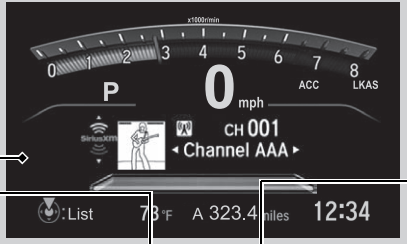
■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.
1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **View Radio Text**.

Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Playing SiriusXM® Radio*



Driver Information Interface

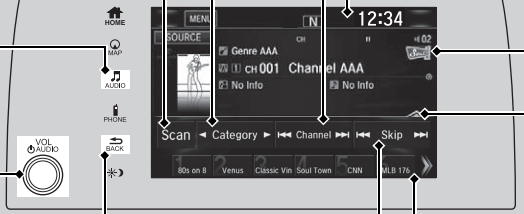
Category Icons
Select ◀ or ▶ to display and select a SiriusXM® Radio category.

Scan Icon
Select to scan each channel.

(Audio) Icon
Select to display the audio screen.

VOL/ ⏻ AUDIO (Volume/Power Audio) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

BACK (Back) Icon
Select to go back to the previous display.



Channel Icons
Select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to the previous or next channel.
Select and hold to rapidly skip 10 channels at a time.

Audio/Information Screen

Station Art

Open/Close Icon*1
Displays/hides the detailed information.

Preset Icons
Tune the preset radio station. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station. Select >> to display preset 7 onwards.

Skip Icons
Select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change section in the channel. Select and hold to move rapidly within the section.

*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

* Not available on all models

Continued

To Change the Tune Mode

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Tune Mode**.
3. Select **Channel Mode** or **Category Mode**.

Playing SiriusXM® Radio*

In the channel mode, all available channels are selectable. In the category mode, you can select a channel within a category (Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc.).

There may be instances when SiriusXM® Radio does not broadcast all the data fields (artist name, title). This does not indicate a problem with your audio system.

SiriusXM® Radio stations load in ascending order, which can take about a minute. Once they have loaded you will be able to scroll up or down to make your selections.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the ▲ or ▼ button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.
Audio Remote Controls P. 233

Tune Start:
When you change to a preset channel, a song being played on that channel restarts from the beginning with this function. This can be turned on or off from the **Audio Settings** screen.
Customized Features P. 349

 * Not available on all models

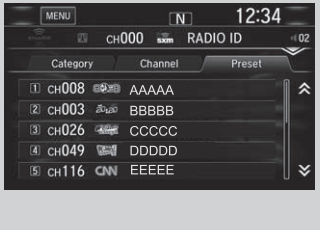
Preset Memory

To store a channel:
1. Tune to the selected channel.
2. Press and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.
3. Select **OK**.

You can also store a channel by the following procedure.
1. Tune to the selected channel.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

■ Multi-channel preset (for music channels only)

You can store up to five of your preferred music channels in total.



1. Tune a station.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number you want to add a music channel.
▶ A message appears if there are no available presets.
5. Select **Combine**.

Playing SiriusXM® Radio*

You can store 12 SiriusXM® channels into the preset memory.

Multi-channel preset (for music channels only)

To store a multi-channel preset, you need to setup the **Multiple Channel Mix Preset** setting to **On**.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 349

* Not available on all models

Continued

Listening to Featured Channels

Suggested channel listing received from SiriusXM® can be displayed and selected.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a channel list.
2. Select the **Channel** tab.
3. Select the featured channel list title you want to listen to.
▶ The selected channel list of the title is displayed.
4. Select the channel.

Listening to Featured Channels

Up to three featured channels by SiriusXM® can be displayed.

Featured channel lists are at the top of the channel list.

■ Replay Function

The system can record up to the last 60 minutes of your currently tuned channel's broadcast, as well as the last 30 minutes of your preset channel's broadcast, starting from the moment you turn the vehicle on. If you tuned to a preset channel, the system records up to 60 minutes of a broadcast instead of up to 30 minutes. You can rewind and replay the last 30 or 60 minutes of a broadcast.

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Playback**.
3. Move the time marker to the position you want to replay.

The following items are available on the pop-up screen:
⏮ (Skip Down): Skips to the previously stored channel. Select and hold to fast-rewind the current selection.
⏭ (Skip Up): Skips to the next channel. Select and hold to fast-forward the current selection.
15 (15sec Back): Select to skip back 15 seconds in the current selection. Select and hold to fast-rewind the current selection.
15 (15sec Skip): Select to skip forward 15 seconds in the current selection. Select and hold to fast-forward the current selection.
▶ Select **OK** to close the pop-up menu. Replay in playback mode continues.

To play or pause on playback mode:
1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Play/Pause**.

■ Returning to real-time broadcast

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Go to Live**.

Continued

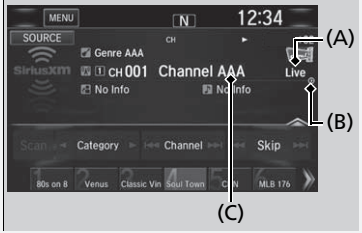
Replay Function

The system starts storing broadcast in memory when the power mode is turned ON. You can go back to the program from that point.

You can no longer replay any program once the power mode is turned off as it erases memory. You can check how long the program has been stored in memory from the audio/information screen.

After 30 or 60 minutes of recording the system will automatically start deleting the oldest data.

Audio/Information Screen



(A): Shows how much time the replayed segment is behind the real-time broadcast
(B): Replayed segment
(C): Length stored in memory

■ Live Sports Alert

While listening to other channels, you can receive sports alerts such as scores from the games of your favorite teams.

■ To set up a favorite team



1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **SportsFlash Setup**.
5. Select **Favorite Team**.
6. Select a team.

■ To set up an alert message

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **SportsFlash Setup**.
5. Select **Interrupt**.
6. Select **On(One Time)** or **On(Continue)**.

Live Sports Alert

The sports alert function is available in SiriusXM® mode only.

To set up a favorite team

Sports alerts cut in only when SiriusXM® mode is on. Selecting **On(One Time)** from the customize settings disables the alert feature next time you turn the power mode to ON.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 349

You can also set up a favorite team by the following procedure.

1. Select **Audio**.
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Setting**.
4. Select **SportsFlash Setup**.

■ **To set up an alert beep**

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **SportsFlash Setup**.
5. Select **Interrupt Beep**.
6. Select **On**.

■ **Traffic and Weather Information**

You can receive traffic and weather information.

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **Traffic & Weather Setup**.
5. Select the region.
▶ When you do not want to receive the information, select **Unregistered**.

■ Scan

Sample each channel on the selected mode for 10 seconds.

1. Select **Scan**.
2. Select **Scan Channels**.
▶ You can select the desired channel by songs using **Scan Song in Preset**.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel**.

To set up an alert beep

You can also set up an alert beep by the following procedure.
1. Select **Audio**.
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Setting**.
4. Select **SportsFlash Setup**.

Traffic and Weather Information

The traffic and weather information function at SiriusXM® mode only.

You can also set up the traffic and weather information by the following procedure.
1. Select **Audio**.
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Setting**.
4. Select **Traffic & Weather Setup**.

Scan

The "Scan Songs in Preset" function is based on TuneScan™ technology of SiriusXM®.

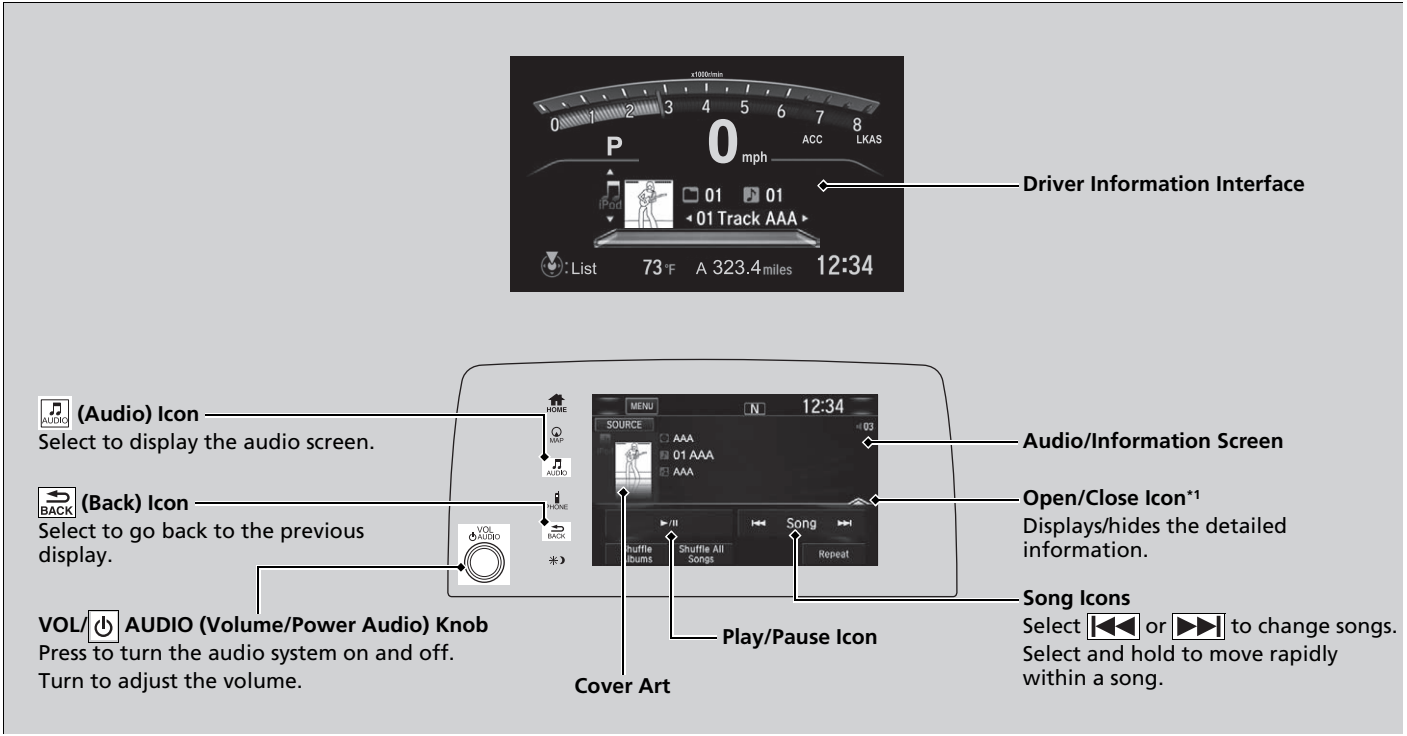
The "Featured Channels" function is based on Featured Favorites™ technology of SiriusXM®.

TuneScan™ and Featured Favorites™ are registered trademarks of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.

Playing an iPod

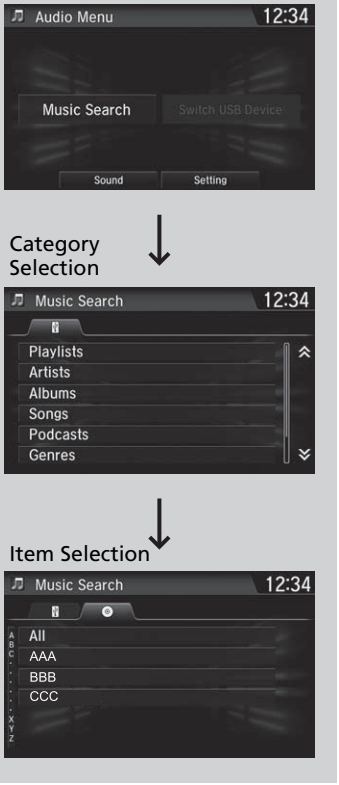
Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

USB Port(s) P. 231



*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

2. Select the items on that menu.

Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 327

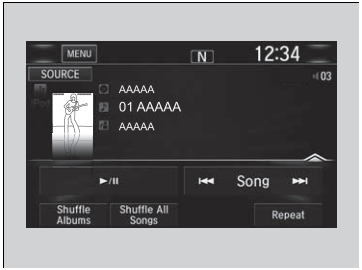
If you operate any music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen.
Reconnect the device if necessary.

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay™, the iPod/USB source is unavailable and audio files on the phone can only be played within Apple CarPlay™.

Continued

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.



Select a play mode.

■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

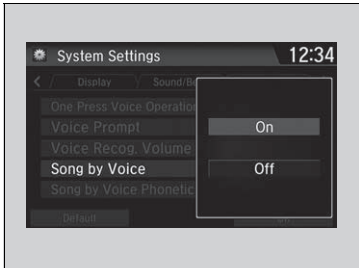
Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

Repeat: Repeats the current track.

Song By Voice™ (SBV)

Use SBV to search for and play music from your USB flash drive or iPod using voice commands.

■ To enable SBV



1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Song by Voice**.
6. Select **Next**, then select **On** or **Off**.

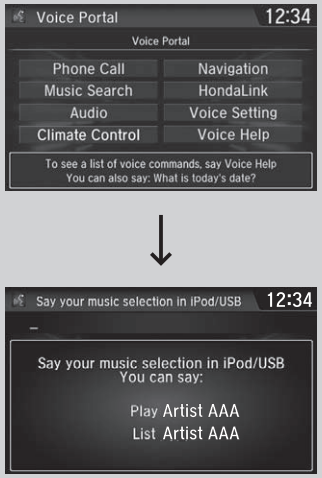
Song By Voice™ (SBV)

Setting options:

- **On** (factory default): Song By Voice™ commands are available.
- **Off**: Disable the feature.

Continued

■ Searching for music using SBV



1. Set the **Song by Voice** setting to **On**.
2. Press the (Talk) button and say "*Music Search*" to activate the SBV feature for the USB flash drive and iPod.
3. Then, say a next command.
   - ▶ Example 1: Say "*(List)'Artist A'*" to view a list of songs by that artist. Select the desired song to start playing.
   - ▶ Example 2: Say "*Play 'Artist A'*" to start playing songs by that artist.
4. To cancel SBV, press the (hang-up/back) button on the steering wheel. The selected song continues playing.

Once you have canceled this mode, you need to press the button and say "*Music Search*" again to re-activate this mode.

Searching for music using SBV

Song By Voice™ Commands List

➡ **Song By Voice Commands** P. 286

NOTE:
Song By Voice™ commands are available for tracks stored on the USB flash drive or iPod.

You can add phonetic modifications of difficult words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands.

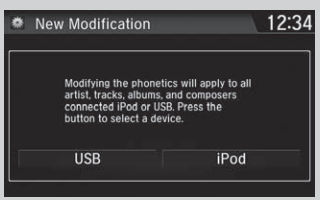
➡ **Phonetic Modification** P. 303

SBV is not available when using Apple CarPlay™. Use Siri® Eyes Free instead.

Phonetic Modification

Add phonetic modifications of difficult or foreign words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands when searching for music on the USB flash drive or iPod.





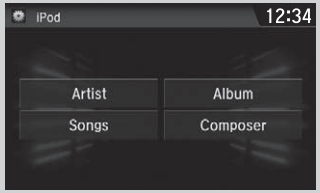
1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Song by Voice Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select **New Modification**.
7. Select **USB** or **iPod**.

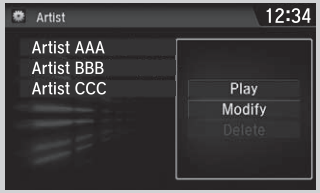
Phonetic Modification

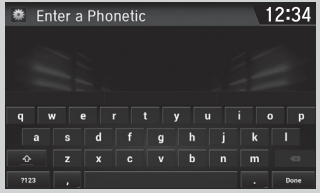
Song by Voice Phonetic Modification is grayed out when **Song By Voice** is set to **Off**.

You can store up to 2,000 phonetic modification items.

Continued







8. Select the item to modify (e.g., **Artist**).
▶ The list of the selected item appears on the screen.

9. Select an entry to modify.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
▶ To listen to the current phonetic modification, select **Play**.
▶ To delete the current phonetic modification, select **Delete**.

10. Select **Modify**.

11. Select the phonetic spelling you want to use (e.g., "*Artist A*") when prompted.

12. Select **Done**.
▶ The artist "*No Name*" is phonetically modified to "*Artist A.*" When in the SBV mode, you can press the (Talk) button and use the voice command "*Play 'Artist A'*" to play songs by the artist "*No Name.*"

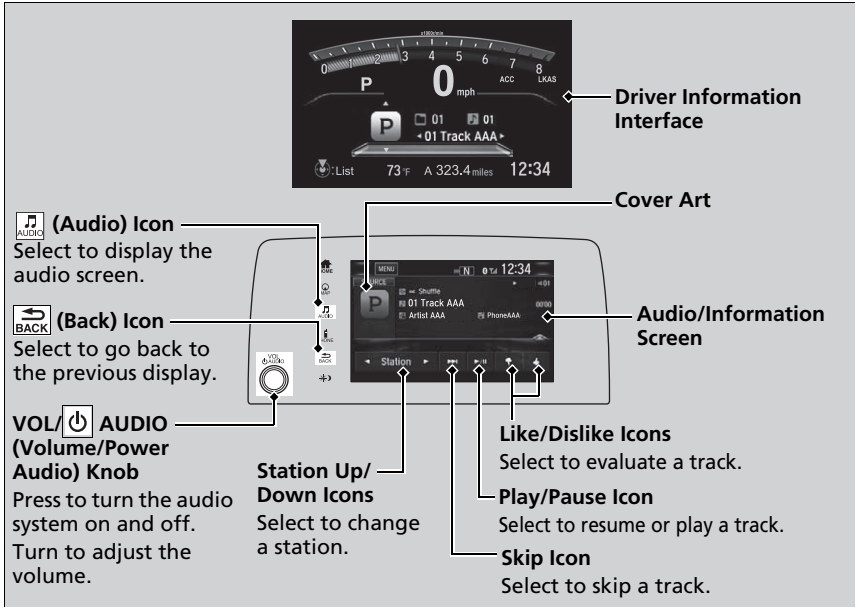
Playing Pandora®*

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from the Pandora® app on a compatible smartphone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system, or with an iPhone, you can connect using your USB cable to the USB port.

Phone Setup P. 416

USB Port(s) P. 231



*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Playing Pandora®*

Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission. Pandora is only available in certain countries. Visit the Pandora website for more information.

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528-7876.

To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit *www.pandora.com*. for more information.

Pandora® is free, personalized radio that plays music and comedy you'll love. Just start with the name of one of your favorite artists, tracks, comedians or composers and Pandora® will create a custom station that plays similar tracks. Pandora® also features hundreds of genre stations ranging from Dubstep to Smooth Jazz to Power Workout.

If you cannot operate Pandora® through the audio system, it may be streaming through *Bluetooth*® Audio. Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

If your phone is connected to Android Auto™, Pandora® is only available through the Android Auto™ interface. Visit the Android Auto™ website to check compatibility.

* Not available on all models

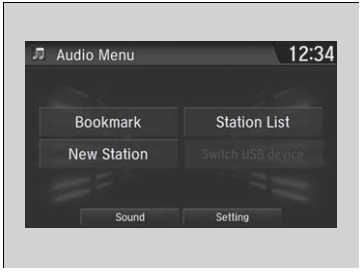
Continued

■ Pandora® Menu

You can operate some of the Pandora® menu items from your vehicle's audio system. The available items are:

- **Bookmark**
- **Station List**
- **New Station**
- **Switch USB device**
- **Sound**
- **Setting**

■ Operating a menu item



1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select an item.

Pandora® Menu

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.
➡ **Pandora®*** P. 329

Pandora® may limit the total number of skips allowed on the service. If you dislike a track after the skip limit has been reached, your feedback will be saved but the current track will continue to play.

To change stations, activate the Pandora® menu, select **Station List**, and then select a new station. It also changes stations on the main Pandora® screen.

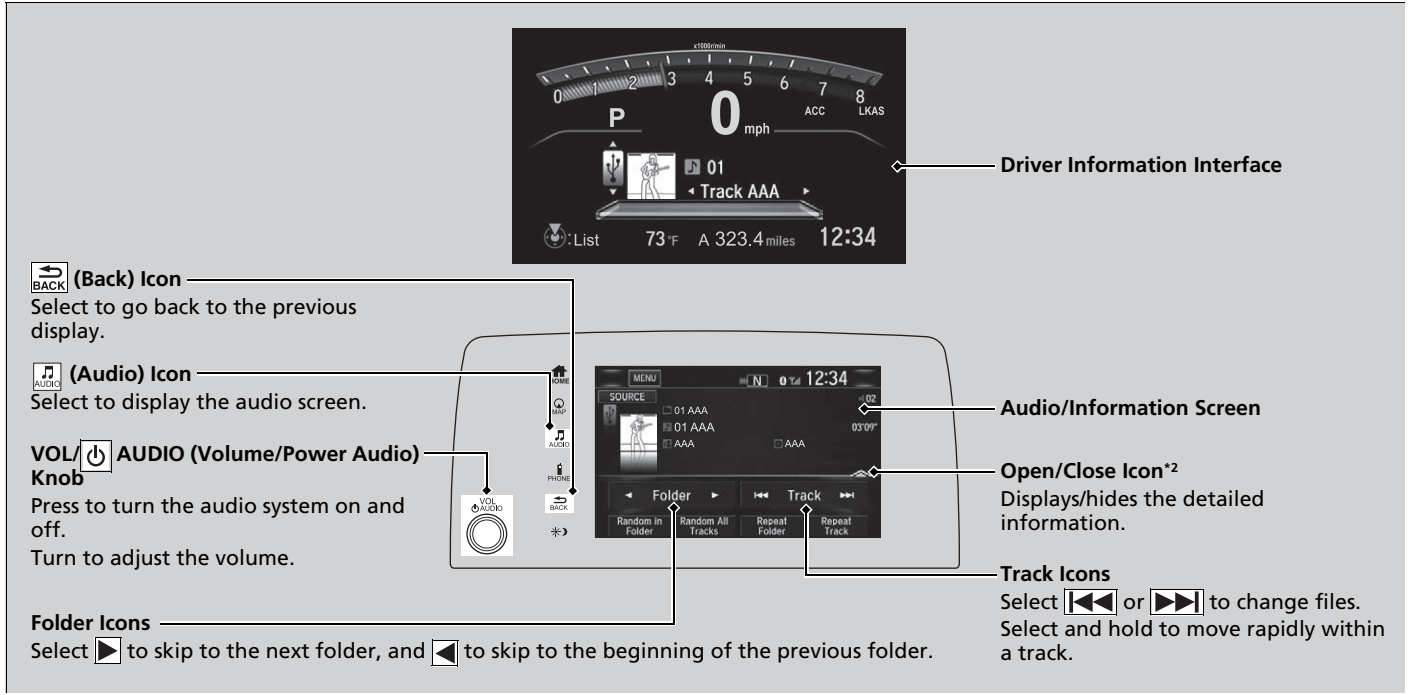
 * Not available on all models

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Port(s) P. 231



*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

*2:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

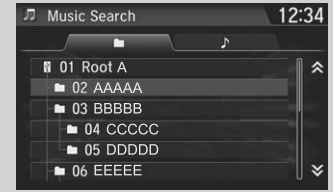
Continued

How to Select a File from the Music Search List



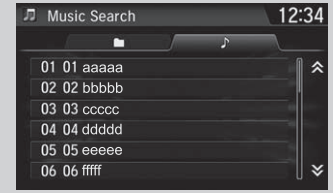
1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

Folder Selection



2. Select a folder.

Track Selection



3. Select a track.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

➔ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 332

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➔ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 327

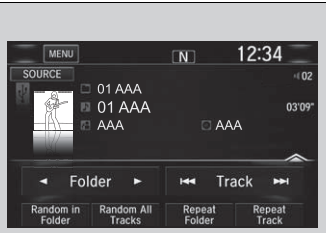
■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.



■ Scan

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Scan**.
3. Select a play mode.



■ Random/Repeat

Select a play mode.

■ To turn off a play mode

To turn off Scan, select BACK or **Cancel**.
To turn off Random or Repeat, select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items
Scan
Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.
Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

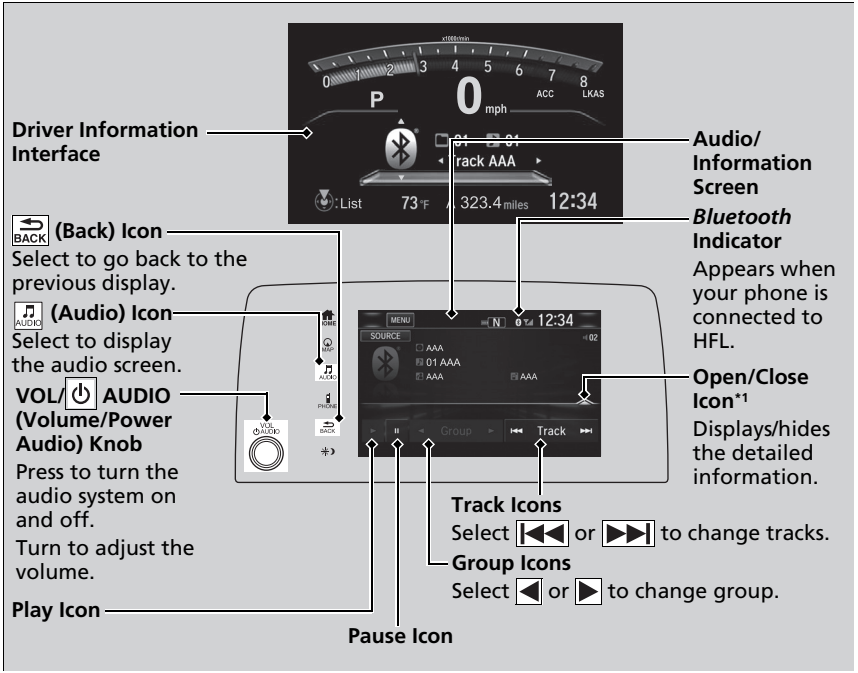
Random/Repeat
Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.
Random All Tracks: Plays all files in random order.
Repeat Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.
Repeat Track: Repeats the current file.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

Phone Setup P. 416



*1: Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible.
To check if your phone is compatible, visit *http://www.handsfreelink.com/Honda/*.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFL at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*® Audio can be different.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay™ or Android Auto™, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting **Connect** ♫ from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



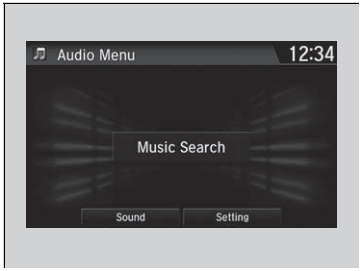
1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
   Phone Setup P. 416
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

To pause or resume a file

Select the play icon or pause icon.

Searching for Music



1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Music Search**.
3. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
4. Select an item.
   ▶ The selection begins playing.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone in the *Bluetooth*® settings on the **Audio Menu** screen by the following procedure.

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Setting**.

Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

HondaLink®

HondaLink® connects you to the latest information from Honda. You can connect your phone wirelessly through Wi-Fi or *Bluetooth*®.

Wi-Fi Connection P. 317
Phone Setup P. 416

■ HondaLink® Menu



■ Places*

Displays restaurants, gas stations, Honda dealers, etc. and provides navigation instructions to those locations via the navigation system.

■ Vehicle

Displays instruction messages when the vehicle needs service.

■ Help & Support

Displays tips on vehicle usage and provides information on roadside assistance and the customer service center.

HondaLink®

The HondaLink® connect app is compatible with most iPhone and Android phones.

Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

If Apple CarPlay™ or Android Auto™ is enabled, HondaLink® can be accessed without the need to connect to Wi-Fi.

* Not available on all models

■ Messages from Honda
Displays helpful and important information from Honda.

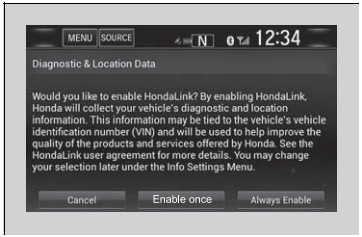
■ Weather*
Displays a weekly five-day weather forecast for any location you want. You can change the ZIP Code at any time.

■ To Set Up to Connect HondaLink® Service
Use the following procedure to connect to the HondaLink® service.

■ To enable the HondaLink® service



1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Info**.
4. Select the **HondaLink** tab.
5. Select **Diagnostics & Location Data**.
6. Select **On**.



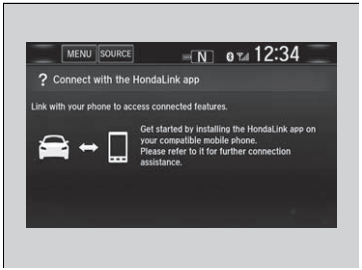
To complete the procedure, you must consent to the collection and transmission of data pertaining to your vehicle.

Enable once: Allows only one time. (Prompt shows again next time.)
Always Enable: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
Cancel: Does not allow this consent.

* Not available on all models

Continued

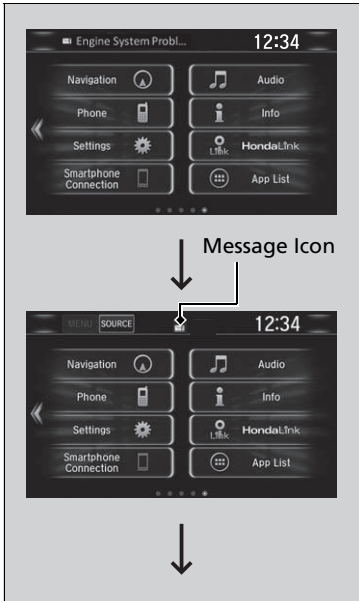
■ To link with HondaLink®



You can see this screen after launching HondaLink®.

Vehicle Information and Message from Honda Tips

Using the shortcut operation, you can quickly gain access to new messages.



1. In the header area, a message appears to notify you of a new message.
▶ When the message is received, a notification ring can be heard.

2. The notification message is replaced by an icon which remains displayed until the new message is read.

Continued



3. From the top of the screen, swipe down to see the messages.

4. Select a new message to open.
▶ If you have selected the update option for HondaLink®, follow the directions on the screen to complete the process.

Vehicle Information and Message from Honda Tips

When you update HondaLink®, you must keep the engine running and maintain a constant connection with HondaLink®.
If the update is interrupted, the system will automatically resume the process. If, however, a week has elapsed since the process was first interrupted, you must repeat the process from the beginning.

You can update HondaLink® by selecting **Message from Honda** on the HondaLink® menu.

Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the Display Audio to the Internet using Wi-Fi and browse websites or use online services on the audio/information screen. If your phone has wireless hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)



1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Wi-Fi** tab.
5. Select **Wi-Fi On/Off Status**, select **Next**, then **On**.
6. Select **Yes**.
7. Select **Wi-Fi Device List**.
   - ▶ Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
   - ▶ Select the phone you want to connect to the system.
   - ▶ If you do not find the phone you want to connect in the list, select **Scan**.



8. Select **Add**.
   - ▶ If needed, enter a password for your phone and select **Done**.
   - ▶ When the connection is successful, the icon is displayed on the top of the screen.
9. Select HOME to go back to the home screen.

Continued

Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to setup the Wi-Fi connection.

Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the icon on the **Wi-Fi Device List** screen. Network speed will not be displayed on this screen.

■ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

iPhone users

You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.

Siri® Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

Phone Setup P. 416

Using Siri® Eyes Free

(Hang-up/back) Button
Press to deactivate Siri® Eyes Free.



Appears when Siri is activated in Siri® Eyes Free

While in Siri® Eyes Free:
The display remains the same. No feedback or commands appear.

(Talk) Button
Press and hold until the display changes as shown.

Siri® Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri® Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

Using Siri® Eyes Free

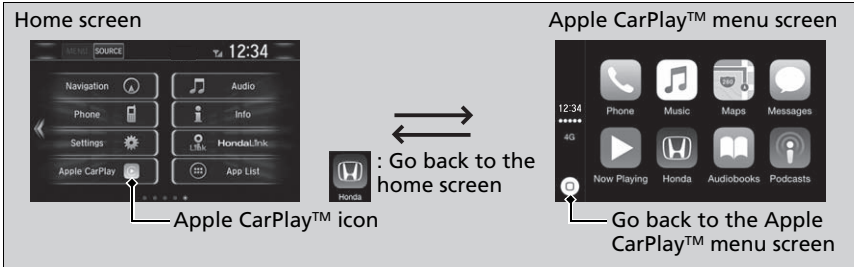
Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

Apple CarPlay™

If you connect an Apple CarPlay™-compatible iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

USB Port(s) P. 231

■ Apple CarPlay™ Menu



■ Phone

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

■ Messages

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

■ Music

Play music stored on your iPhone.

Apple CarPlay™

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay™.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay™ and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Apple CarPlay™, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. The USB port located on the back of the center console compartment will not enable Apple CarPlay™ operation.

USB Port(s) P. 231

To directly access the Apple CarPlay™ phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen. While connected to Apple CarPlay™, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay™. If you want to make a call with *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®, turn Apple CarPlay™ OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay™ P. 321

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay™, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay™ is connected.

Phone Setup P. 416

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay™ is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

■ Maps

Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay™) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be canceled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay™

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay™. Use of Apple CarPlay™ will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay™ experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the Display Audio Screen.

■ Enabling Apple CarPlay™



Enable once: Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)
Always Enable: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
Cancel: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

Continued

Apple CarPlay™

Apple CarPlay™ Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay™ requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay™ functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay™ functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay™ performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay™. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay™

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay™:
Select HOME→Settings→Smartphone→Apple CarPlay

Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay™ is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

■ Operating Apple CarPlay™ with Siri®

Press and hold the (Talk) button to activate Siri®.



(Talk) button:
Press and hold to activate Siri®.
Press again to deactivate Siri®.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Operating Apple CarPlay™ with Siri®

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri®.

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.
- Find a table for four tonight in Chicago.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

Android Auto™

When you connect an Android phone to the Display Audio system via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto™ is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto™, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto™, a tutorial will appear on the screen.
We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto™.

➡ **USB Port(s)** P. 231
➡ **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 325

Android Auto™

To use Android Auto™, you need to download the Android Auto™ app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto™.
Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used with Android Auto™ phone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto™ and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto™, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. The USB port on the back of the center console compartment will not enable Android Auto™ operation.

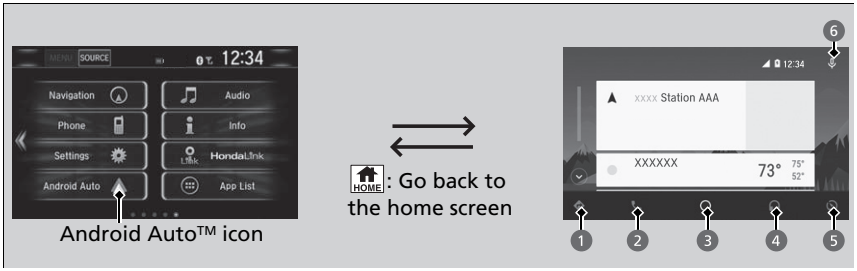
➡ **USB Port(s)** P. 231

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto™, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto™ is connected.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 416

Continued

■ Android Auto™ Menu



❶ Maps (Navigation)

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto™) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be canceled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

The audio/Information screen shows you turn-by turn driving directions to your destination.

❷ Phone (Communication)

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

❸ Google Now (Home screen)

Display useful information organized by Android Auto™ into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

Android Auto™

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto™ is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto™ homepage.

Android Auto™ Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto™ requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto™ functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto™ functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto™ performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto™. Refer to the Android Auto™ homepage for information on compatible apps.

4 Music and audio
Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto™. To switch between music apps, press this icon.
5 Go back to the Home Screen.
6 Voice
Operate Android Auto™ with your voice.

■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto™ is automatically initiated.

■ Enabling Android Auto™



Enable once: Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)
Always Enable: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
Cancel: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

Enabling Android Auto™

Only initialize Android Auto™ when you safely parked. When Android Auto™ first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the method below to change Android Auto™ settings after you have completed the initial setup:
Select HOME→Settings→Smartphone→Android Auto

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto™ is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

Continued

■ Operating Android Auto™ with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the (Talk) button to operate Android Auto™ with your voice.



(Talk) button:
Press and hold to operate Android Auto™ with your voice.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

(Hang-up/back) button:
Press to deactivate voice recognition.

Operating Android Auto™ with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto™ homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by pressing the icon in the upper-right corner of the screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
USB Error[*1, *2]	Appears when there is a problem with the audio system. Check if the device is compatible with the audio system.
The connected USB device has a problem. See Owner's Manual[*2]	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
Unsupported Ver[*1] **Unsupported Version**[*2]	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
Connect Retry[*1, *2]	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File[*1, *2]	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song.
No Song[*1] **No Data**[*2]	iPod Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, or WAV[*1] files in the USB flash drive. iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported[*1, *2]	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.

*1:Models with color audio system
*2:Models with Display Audio

Continued

Error Message	Solution
Device No Response[*1]	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
HUB Unsupported[*1]	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.

*1:Models with color audio system

Pandora®*

If an error occurs while playing Pandora®, you may see the following error messages.
If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Models with color audio system

Error Message	Solution
No Device Connected	Appears when no device is connected. Check the *Bluetooth*® and USB connection.
No Data	Appears when no data is available with Pandora® activated.Reboot the app and reconnect the device.
To begin listening, select a station from the stations list.	Appears when any station is not selected. Select a station from the station list on the device.
PANDORA App version is not supported.	Appears when Pandora® version is not supported. Update Pandora® to the latest version.
No stations found. Please create a station.	Appears when there is no station list on the device. Use the device to create a station.
PANDORA system maintenance.	Appears when the Pandora® server is in maintenance. Try again later.
Unable to play PANDORA. When stopped, log-in to PANDORA.	Appears you do not log in to Pandora®. Log in to Pandora®.
There is no internet connectivity on the phone.	Appears when the network is deteriorated. Move the vehicle and check the reception of the signal.
Unable to play PANDORA. Please try again later.	Appears when the sending the data is failed for ten times and the device may have a malfunction. Try again later. Move the vehicle and check the reception of the signal.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Error Message	Solution
PANDORA is unable to play music in this country.	Appears when the vehicle is in the restricted area to listen the music. Move the vehicle and check the reception of the signal.
USB Error. Please check owners manual.	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. If there is any problem with the connected device itself, the audio system may not be able to detect it. Contact a dealer.

Models with Display Audio

Error Message	Solution
To begin listening, select a station from the Stations list.	Appears when there is no station list on the device. Use the device to create a station.
Unable to rate track. Please try again. **Skip limit reached.**	Appears when you try to skip a song or select **Like/Dislike** over the predetermined number of times in an hour.
Unable to play PANDORA. Please try again later. **Unable to retrieve a track explanation. Please try again later.** **Unable to create bookmark. Please try again later.**	Appears when the commanded operation fails. Try again later.
No Data	Appears when no data is available with Pandora® activated. Reboot the app and reconnect the device.
PANDORA App version is not supported.	Appears when Pandora® version is not supported. Update Pandora® to the latest version.
Unable to complete the operation. Please try again later.	Appears when the Pandora® server is in maintenance. Try again later.

Error Message	Solution
Unable to connect Pandora. When stopped, check your mobile phone	Appears when Pandora® is unable to play music. Check your device.
	Appears when Pandora® app is not installed on your device. Install Pandora® app to your device.

Models with Display Audio

Android/Apps

If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message*1	Solution
Unfortunately, ** has stopped.**	Error has occurred within app, select **OK** on the screen to close the app.
**** is not responding. Would you like to close it?**	App is not responding. Select **Wait** if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select **OK** to close the app and start it up. If the error message continues, perform **Factory Data Reset**. ➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 381

*1:****part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.

SiriusXM® Radio Service*

Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

1. You need your radio ID ready before registering for subscription. To see the ID on the screen, select **Channel** 0.
2. Have your radio ID ready, and either call SiriusXM® or visit the SiriusXM® website to subscribe.

Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

Contact Information for SiriusXM® Radio:
- U.S.: SiriusXM® Radio at *www.siriusxm.com/subscribenow* or 1-866-635-2349
- Canada: SiriusXM® Canada at *www.siriusxm.ca/subscribe-now* or 1-877-209-0079

Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

Switch to the SiriusXM® mode by using the **ENTER** button on the steering wheel, or through the audio/information screen, and stay in this mode for about 30 minutes until the service is activated. Make sure your vehicle is in an open area with good reception.

Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

The SiriusXM® satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator.

You may experience reception problems under the following circumstances:
- In a location with an obstruction to the south of your vehicle.
- In tunnels
- On the lower level of a multi-tiered road
- Large items carried on the roof rack

SiriusXM® Radio Display Messages

Channel Not Subscribed:
You are not subscribed to the channel selected.
Subscription Update:
SiriusXM® radio is receiving information update from the network.
Channel Not Available:
No such channel exists, or the artist or title information is unavailable.
No Signal:
The signal is too weak in the current location.
Antenna Disconnected:
The SiriusXM® antenna is disconnected. Contact a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) released between 2005 and 2012
iPod touch (1st to 5th generation) released between 2007 and 2012
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4S/iPhone 5/iPhone 5c*1/iPhone 5s*1

*1:Models with Display Audio

USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, or WAV* formats may be unsupported.

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

* Not available on all models

Honda App License Agreement

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE CAREFULLY READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (THIS "AGREEMENT") WHICH GOVERNS YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE INSTALLED ON YOUR HONDA OR ACURA VEHICLE (YOUR "VEHICLE") AS WELL AS THE APPLICATIONS, SERVICES, FUNCTIONS, AND CONTENT PROVIDED THROUGH THE SOFTWARE (COLLECTIVELY, THE "SERVICES"). YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES WILL SERVE AS YOUR CONSENT TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. THE SOFTWARE IS OWNED (OR LICENSED), PROVIDED, AND/OR OPERATED BY AMERICAN HONDA MOTOR CO. INC., ("HONDA," "US," "WE," OR "OUR"), WITH ITS BUSINESS ADDRESS AT 1919 TORRANCE BLVD., TORRANCE, CA 90501. REFERENCE TO "HONDA" IN THIS AGREEMENT INCLUDES HONDA'S PARENT COMPANY AND ITS AFFILIATES AND DESIGNATED AGENTS. THE SERVICES ARE OWNED (OR LICENSED), PROVIDED, AND/OR OPERATED BY HONDA OR A THIRD-PARTY SERVICE PROVIDER (A "PROVIDER"). REFERENCE TO A "PROVIDER" IN THIS AGREEMENT INCLUDES SUCH PROVIDER'S PARENT COMPANY, AFFILIATES, AND DESIGNATED AGENTS.

A. Description of the Software. The SOFTWARE includes the software, firmware and the like, installed and executing on your VEHICLE during manufacture, and thereafter updated from time to time by HONDA, you or an authorized HONDA dealer (a "DEALER"). The SOFTWARE allows you to access and use a variety of SERVICES, including but not limited to: (a) HONDA applications, services, and content provided through the SOFTWARE (together, "HONDA SERVICES"); and (b) PROVIDER applications, services, and content provided through the SOFTWARE (together, "PROVIDER SERVICES"), each of which may provide access to various information, media, content, and services.

B. SOFTWARE Licensing and Intellectual Property.

1. SOFTWARE. This AGREEMENT grants you a non-exclusive, limited, and revocable license to use the SOFTWARE and SERVICES solely (a) as installed on your VEHICLE by HONDA, (b) as updated on your Vehicle by HONDA, you (but only as and when directed by HONDA), or a DEALER and (c) as permitted under the terms of this AGREEMENT.

2. HONDA Services. The SOFTWARE may provide you with access to various HONDA SERVICES. Installation, activation, or use of HONDA SERVICES may require your consent to additional terms, conditions, and privacy policies applicable to those HONDA SERVICES (the "HONDA TERMS"). You acknowledge and agree that any collection, use, sharing of data generated by your VEHICLE or your use of your VEHICLE, and your use of the HONDA SERVICES shall be subject to this AGREEMENT and any additional HONDA TERMS that may be specifically applicable to such HONDA SERVICES or data generation. The HONDA SERVICES may collect, use, and share such data while you are using the SOFTWARE.

3. Open-Source Software. The SOFTWARE and SERVICES may incorporate software licensed to HONDA under free or open-source licenses which govern HONDA's distribution and your use of such software. HONDA and the third-party authors, licensors, and distributors of such software disclaim all warranties and all liability arising from any and all use or distribution of the software. To the extent such software is provided under terms that differ from the applicable free or open-source licenses, those terms are offered by HONDA alone. Additional information regarding free and open-source software incorporated in the SOFTWARE and SERVICES is available in this manual or within the SOFTWARE.

4. Provider Services. The SOFTWARE may provide you with access to various PROVIDER SERVICES. Installation or use of such PROVIDER SERVICES may require your consent to additional terms, conditions, and privacy policies of the applicable PROVIDER (the "PROVIDER TERMS"). This AGREEMENT restricts the manner in which you can install and use PROVIDER SERVICES but does not grant you a license or permission to use such PROVIDER SERVICES. Your permission to use PROVIDER SERVICES is limited and subject to any license grants, conditions, and limitations included in the PROVIDER TERMS. You acknowledge that any collection, use, sharing of your information, targeted advertising practices by PROVIDERS, and your use of the PROVIDER SERVICES shall be subject to both this AGREEMENT and any applicable PROVIDER TERMS. The PROVIDER SERVICES may collect, use, and share such information while you are using the SOFTWARE.

5. License Limitations and Restrictions on Use.
(a) Limited License. You understand and agree that the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are licensed, not sold, to you solely for use in accordance with this AGREEMENT and any applicable PROVIDER TERMS, and any documentation for the VEHICLE made available to you by HONDA (any "DOCUMENTATION"). HONDA and its licensors reserve all rights in the SOFTWARE and HONDA SERVICES not expressly granted to you under this AGREEMENT. PROVIDERS and their licensors reserve all rights in the PROVIDER SERVICES not expressly granted to you under the applicable PROVIDER TERMS.

(b) Restrictions on Use. The licenses granted under this AGREEMENT do not permit you to use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES on a device other than your VEHICLE. As a condition of using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, you agree that you may not and will not:

(1) copy, download, distribute, modify, publish, sell, rent, lease, lend, license, sublicense, reuse, or create derivative works of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES or any of the content or other material within the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, including without limitation, HONDA or PROVIDER names, logos, or any other trademarks of HONDA or PROVIDERS or used in association with the SOFTWARE or any SERVICES, except as required to use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in accordance with this AGREEMENT, any applicable PROVIDER TERMS, and the DOCUMENTATION;

(2) access or use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in any manner intended to damage or impair the operation of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES or interfere with anyone else's use and enjoyment of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES;

(3) access or attempt to access any system or server on which the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is hosted or modify or alter the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in any way;

(4) use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES for any unlawful purpose, or in violation of any third party rights;

(5) use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in violation of any applicable traffic regulations, rules or laws, including but not limited to any driver distraction laws, rules or regulations;

(6) violate the terms of this AGREEMENT, any HONDA TERMS, any PROVIDER TERMS or other applicable third-party terms, conditions, and privacy policies; or

(7) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, attempt to derive the source code of, nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble, or attempt to derive the source code of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted (a) by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or (b) the terms of applicable free or opensource software licenses.

6. Intellectual Property Rights. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, the accompanying DOCUMENTATION, and all copies of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are owned by HONDA, PROVIDERS, or their suppliers or licensors. This AGREEMENT does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of HONDA, PROVIDERS, or their licensors, affiliates, or suppliers.

7. Export Restrictions: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are subject to U.S., European Union, and other export jurisdictions. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use, and destination restrictions issued by the U.S. and other governments.

C. SOFTWARE Operation

1. HONDA reserves the right to suspend or terminate your access to and use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES if you are found to be in violation of this AGREEMENT or as reasonably deemed necessary by HONDA.

2. Eligibility/Registration/Activation. The SOFTWARE is intended for and available to individuals who (a) are of legal age of majority in their jurisdiction of residence (and at least 18 years of age), or are younger than 18 years of age and possess a valid driver's license issued by their jurisdiction of residence, and (b) own or have permissive access to a compatible VEHICLE. We do not knowingly collect any information, including personal information, from children under 13. If we learn or are notified that we have collected personal information of a child under 13, we will immediately take steps to delete such information.

3. Use of PROVIDER SERVICES through the SOFTWARE. Certain PROVIDER SERVICES made available through the SOFTWARE may require that you register or otherwise have an account with the PROVIDER and agree to PROVIDER TERMS. Any use of any of such PROVIDER SERVICES within the SOFTWARE is subject to this AGREEMENT and the applicable PROVIDER TERMS. HONDA does not exercise control over such PROVIDER SERVICES and is not responsible or liable for the availability, security, or content of such PROVIDER SERVICES, and the inclusion of any PROVIDER SERVICES does not imply a referral from, the approval of, or the endorsement by HONDA of such PROVIDER SERVICES. HONDA is not responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for any damage relating to or resulting from your use of the PROVIDER SERVICES.

4. Links to Third Party Sites: The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to access third-party sites and content through the use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. The third-party sites and content are not under the control of HONDA. HONDA is not responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for such third-party websites and their content or for any damage relating to or resulting from your access or use of such websites and content.

5. Unauthorized Use and Abuse. You are responsible for ensuring your (and any authorized third parties') use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES remains in compliance with this AGREEMENT and all other applicable HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS. You acknowledge and agree that any use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES occurring through your VEHICLE will be deemed your actions and that HONDA and PROVIDERS may rely upon such actions. You agree to immediately notify us if you suspect fraudulent or abusive activity involving the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. If you so notify us or if we otherwise suspect fraudulent or abusive activity, you agree to cooperate with us in any fraud investigation and to use any fraud prevention measures we prescribe. Your failure to immediately notify us or cooperate to use such measures will result in your liability for all fraudulent usage or abusive activity associated with your VEHICLE.

6. SOFTWARE Updates. The SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be updated when your VEHICLE is serviced by a DEALER or remotely, over-the-air, by HONDA from time to time; such updates may occur with or without further notice or your future consent. The SOFTWARE may be updated at HONDA's discretion and for any purpose including, without limitation, to patch or otherwise improve the SOFTWARE or SERVICES functionality, security, or stability. All updates to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are subject to this AGREEMENT and any other applicable HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS.

7. Uninstalling, Removing, and Replacing the SOFTWARE. Replacing SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES with software or firmware not provided and installed by HONDA or a DEALER will render all representations and warranties for the SOFTWARE, HONDA SERVICES, and VEHICLE functionality reliant upon the SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES null and void.

D. SOFTWARE Operational Notices and Warnings

1. Vehicle Geolocation Information. You acknowledge that your VEHICLE may be equipped with certain traffic and map features. The traffic feature will automatically collect and transmit, through GPS technology, your Vehicle's current location (longitude and latitude), travel direction and speed ("VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION") to HONDA and PROVIDERS. The VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION is used by HONDA and PROVIDERS to provide traffic and navigation-related information to you, but may also be used to provide other SERVICES or offers to you. HONDA will not use such VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION for its own marketing efforts, or provide such information to unaffiliated third parties for their own purposes, without your express consent.

2. Potential Map Inaccuracy and Route Safety. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls, routing, or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following suggested routes. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal driving maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals, or clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for such locations and routes. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Navigation features are not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by the SOFTWARE or SERVICES should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

3. Speech Recognition: You acknowledge and understand that HONDA and PROVIDERS may record, retain, and use voices commands when you use the speech recognition components of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. You and all VEHICLE operators and passengers (a) consent to the recording and retention of voice commands in support of providing speech recognition components and (b) release HONDA and PROVIDERS from all claims, liabilities, and losses that may result from any use of such recorded voice commands. Recognition errors are inherent in speech recognition. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors. Neither HONDA nor PROVIDERS will be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.

4. Distraction Hazards. Navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) input or setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause a crash or other serious consequences; the ability to undertake such interactions may also be limited by state or local law, which laws you are responsible to know and follow. Even occasional short scans of the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving at a critical time. Pull over and stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could result in a crash.

E. Information Collection and Storage

1. Information Collection, Use, Transmission and Storage of Data. Consent to Use of Data: You agree that HONDA and PROVIDERS may collect and use your information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. HONDA may share such information with third parties, including, without limitation, PROVIDERS, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agents, solely to improve their products or to provide services or technologies to you. HONDA, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

2. Information Storage. Depending on the type of multimedia system you have in your VEHICLE, certain information may be stored for ease of use of the SOFTWARE including, without limitation, search history, location history in certain applications, previous and saved destinations, map locations within certain applications, and device numbers and contact information.

(a) Vehicle Health Information. Your VEHICLE may remotely transmit information regarding the status and health of your VEHICLE ("VEHICLE INFORMATION") to HONDA without notification to you. VEHICLE INFORMATION may contain VEHICLE maintenance and malfunction status that is derived from VEHICLE diagnostic data and includes, but is not limited to, status of powered doors and windows, battery life data, battery charging data, VEHICLE speed, coolant temperature, air compressor revolution, output power, warning codes, diagnostic trouble codes, fuel injection volume, and engine rotations per minute. VEHICLE HEALTH INFORMATION may be used by HONDA for research and development, to deliver HONDA SERVICES and information to you, and to contact you, and is retained only for a period of time necessary to fulfill these goals.

(b) VEHICLE Geolocation Data (non-navigation/map based). If you opt-in to geolocation-based SERVICES, your vehicle's geolocation data (latitude and longitude) will be automatically sent from your VEHICLE to HONDA and PROVIDERS.

(c) You understand that the inputting or uploading of information to your VEHICLE's multimedia system or the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is at your own risk and that HONDA is not responsible for unauthorized access to or use of any personal or other information. All information uploaded to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be stored on your VEHICLES's multimedia system and you understand that the security and safety of your VEHICLE's multimedia system is your sole responsibility.

F. NO WARRANTY. You understand and agree that your use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are solely at your own risk and that you will be solely responsible for any damage to your VEHICLE's multimedia system or any other equipment or any loss of data that may result from your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. THE SOFTWARE AND SERVICES ARE PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESSED, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY. WE SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. HONDA makes no warranties that the SOFTWARE or SERVICES will meet your requirements, or that the SOFTWARE or SERVICES will be uninterrupted, timely, secure, non-infringing or error free. You understand and agree that you are responsible for any and all charges, costs or expenses associated with your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. Advice or information, whether oral or written, obtained by you from us or through the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are provided for informational purposes only and will not create any warranty not expressly made herein. You should not rely on any such information or advice. We assume no liability or responsibility for any errors or omissions in the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. We do not make any warranty or representation that your use of the material displayed on, or obtained through, the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is non-infringing of any rights of any third party. Any decision or action taken by you on the basis of information or content provided via the application is at your sole discretion and risk. HONDA and PROVIDERS are not responsible or liable for any such decision, or for the accuracy, completeness, usefulness, or availability of any content or information displayed, transmitted, or otherwise made available via the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. To the extent jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion of certain warranties, some of the above exclusions may not apply to you.

G. LIMITATIONS ON LIABILITY. You and HONDA are each waiving important rights.
1. Limitations on YOUR liability. HONDA cannot recover from you any consequential, indirect, incidental, or special damages, or attorney's fees in connection with your use of the SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES. HONDA WAIVES TO THE FULLEST EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW ANY CLAIM FOR DAMAGES OTHER THAN DIRECT, COMPENSATORY DAMAGES AS LIMITED IN THIS AGREEMENT.

2. Limitation on HONDA and PROVIDER liability. Neither HONDA nor PROVIDERS will be liable to you or any other party for consequential, indirect, incidental, special, or punitive damages (including without limitation lost profits) in connection with your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, even if HONDA or PROVIDERS are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). To the extent that a jurisdiction does not permit the exclusion or limitation of liability as set forth herein our liability is limited to the maximum extent permitted by law in such states. If HONDA or PROVIDERS are found liable to you for any reason, you agree that the aggregate liability of all these parties to you for any claim is limited to ten U.S. dollars (US $10.00). Neither HONDA nor any PROVIDER would have agreed to provide the SOFTWARE or SERVICES to you if you did not agree to this limitation. This amount is the sole and exclusive liability of HONDA and PROVIDERS to you, and is payable as liquidated damages and not as a penalty. Except where prohibited by law, you may not bring any claim against HONDA or any third-party beneficiary more than two (2) years after the claim arises. We do not have any liability for SOFTWARE or SERVICES interruptions of any length.

(a) Release of HONDA and PROVIDERS For yourself and anyone else claiming under you, you agree to release and discharge HONDA, PROVIDERS, their respective officers, directors, and employees, and each third-party beneficiary from all claims, liabilities and losses in connection with the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, including, but not limited to claims for personal injury or property damage arising from the total or partial failure of performance of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, even if caused by or based upon the negligence, gross negligence, strict products liability, Deceptive Trade Practices Act violations, bad faith, or breach of warranty of us or the malfunction of the SOFTWARE or SOFTWARE SERVICES. YOU AGREE TO WAIVE TO THE FULLEST EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, ANY CLAIM FOR DAMAGES OTHER THAN DIRECT, COMPENSATORY DAMAGES AS LIMITED IN THIS AGREEMENT. YOU HEREBY RELEASE AND DISCHARGE HONDA AND ITS LICENSORS AND CONTRACTORS (INCLUDING ANY THIRD PARTIES PROVIDING ALL OR PART OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES) FROM AND AGAINST ANY CLAIMS, DAMAGES, EXPENSES AND LIABILITY ARISING FROM OR RELATED TO ANY INJURIES, DAMAGES, OR LOSSES TO ANY PERSON (INCLUDING DEATH) OR PROPERTY OF ANY KIND RESULTING IN WHOLE OR PART, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, FROM YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES.

H. Survival. You agree that the limitations of liability and indemnities in this AGREEMENT will survive even after the AGREEMENT has ended. These limitations of liability apply not only to you, but to anyone using the SOFTWARE or SERVICES via your VEHICLE, to anyone making a claim on your behalf, and to any claims made by your family, employees, customers, or others arising out of or relating to your VEHICLE, the SOFTWARE, or SERVICES.

I. Availability/Interruption. The SOFTWARE and certain SERVICES are made available through your VEHICLE's compatible multimedia system when the VEHICLE is turned on. Certain SERVICES may be available only through your compatible mobile device when it is within the operating range of the VEHICLE and a wireless carrier. The availability of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be subject to transmission limitation or interruption, including but not limited to technical obsolesce or sunsetting of the hardware, software or firmware, inside of or external to the Vehicle, required for data transmission or receipt. HONDA does not guarantee that the SOFTWARE, SERVICES, or any portion thereof will be available at all times or in all areas. You acknowledge and agree that HONDA is not responsible for performance degradation, interruption or delays. You acknowledge that HONDA shall not be liable to you if the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in a given location are not available. If the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are not available within your intended location, you agree that your sole remedy shall be to cease using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES.

J. PRODUCT SUPPORT: Product support for the SOFTWARE is provided by HONDA. For product support, please refer to HONDA instructions provided in the DOCUMENTATION. Should you have any questions concerning this AGREEMENT, or if you desire to contact HONDA for any other reason, please refer to the HONDA contact information provided in the DOCUMENTATION.

K. Termination and Transfer.

1. Termination. This AGREEMENT is effective until terminated by you or US. WE may terminate this AGREEMENT for any or no reason, and with or without notice to you. Your rights under this AGREEMENT will terminate automatically without notice from US if you fail to comply with any term of this AGREEMENT. Upon termination of this AGREEMENT, you shall cease all use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES.

2. Transfer: You may permanently transfer your rights under this AGREEMENT only as part of a sale or transfer of the VEHICLE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE and HONDA SERVICES (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, and any upgrades), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this AGREEMENT. You agree to notify HONDA upon the sale or transfer of the VEHICLE. To contact HONDA, please refer to the HONDA contact information provided in the DOCUMENTATION.

L. Changes to the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. WE may change, modify, or update the SOFTWARE or SERVICES from time to time. Unless explicitly stated otherwise, any new features or services that augment or enhance the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in the future shall respectively be considered part of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES and subject to this AGREEMENT. WE reserve the right at any time and from time to time to interrupt, restrict, modify, suspend, discontinue, temporarily or permanently, the SOFTWARE or SERVICES (or any portion thereof), with or without notice to you, and you agree that HONDA shall not be liable to you or to any third party for any modification, suspension or discontinuance of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES.

M. ARBITRATION:

PLEASE READ THIS ARBITRATION PROVISION CAREFULLY TO UNDERSTAND YOUR RIGHTS. YOU AGREE THAT ANY CLAIM THAT YOU MAY HAVE IN THE FUTURE MUST BE RESOLVED THROUGH BINDING ARBITRATION. YOU WAIVE THE RIGHT TO HAVE YOUR DISPUTE HEARD IN COURT AND WAIVE THE RIGHT TO BRING CLASS CLAIMS. YOU UNDERSTAND THAT DISCOVERY AND APPEAL RIGHTS ARE MORE LIMITED IN ARBITRATION.

Arbitration is a method of resolving a claim, dispute or controversy without filing a lawsuit. By agreeing to arbitrate, the right to go to court is waived and instead claims, disputes or controversies are submitted to binding arbitration. This provision sets forth the terms and conditions of our agreement. YOU and HONDA agree and acknowledge that this Agreement affects interstate commerce and the Federal Arbitration Act ("FAA") applies. By using the Software, Vehicle, or Services, YOU elect to have disputes resolved by arbitration. YOU, HONDA or any involved third party may pursue a Claim. "Claim" means any dispute between YOU, HONDA, or any involved third party relating to your use of the Software, the Vehicle, or the Services, this Agreement, or our relationship, including any representations, omissions or warranties. "Claim" does not include personal injury or wrongful death claims. YOU or HONDA may seek remedies in small claims court or provisional judicial remedies without arbitrating. In addition, notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, YOU or HONDA may seek equitable relief in a court of competent jurisdiction.

YOU or HONDA may select arbitration with American Arbitration Association, JAMS or National Arbitration and Mediation. Contact these sponsors for their rules. The hearing will be in the federal district where YOU reside. If agreed, it may be by telephone or written submissions. Filing and arbitrator fees to be paid per the sponsor rules. You may contact the sponsor for a fee waiver. If no fee waivers, HONDA will pay filing and arbitrator fees up to $5,000, unless law requires more. Each party is responsible for other fees. Arbitrator may award costs or fees to prevailing party, if permitted by law. HONDA will not seek fees, unless the claims are frivolous.

Arbitrator shall be an attorney or current or retired judge familiar with automotive or consumer software. The arbitrator shall follow substantive law, statute of limitations and decide all issues relating to the interpretation, construction, enforceability and applicability of this provision. The arbitrator may order relief permitted by law. This provision is governed and enforceable by the FAA. An award shall include a written opinion and be final, subject to appeal by the FAA.
This provision survives termination of this Agreement or relationship, bankruptcy, assignment or transfer. If part of this provision is unenforceable, the remainder remains in effect. If unenforceability allows arbitration as a class action, then this provision is entirely unenforceable. YOU may opt out within 30 days of your initial use of the Software by sending a signed, written notice to HONDA at Honda Financial Services, P.O. Box 165007, Irving, TX 75016. HONDA reserves the right to make changes to this provision after providing written notice and an opportunity to opt out.

N. Miscellaneous: You may not assign this AGREEMENT without HONDA's prior written consent. This AGREEMENT and any additional HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS represents the entire agreement between you and US. HONDA may amend the terms of this AGREEMENT by providing you with notices of such updated terms. If you do not consent to be bound by the updated terms, your sole remedy will be to cease using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES. If any part of this AGREEMENT is found invalid, void, or unenforceable, the balance of the AGREEMENT will remain valid and enforceable according to its terms. To the fullest extent permitted by law, and except as explicitly provided otherwise, this AGREEMENT and any disputes arising out of or relating to it will be governed by the laws of the State of California, except that California laws concerning choice of law or conflicts shall not apply if they would cause the substantive law of another jurisdiction to apply. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Section M shall be governed by the Federal Arbitration Act and the laws of the State of California, as applicable, as set forth therein. The failure to enforce any term of this AGREEMENT on one occasion shall not prevent enforcement on any other occasion or the enforcement of any other term. Headings and captions shall not be considered included for purposes of interpretation or application hereof, but are for convenience only.

Models with Display Audio

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay™/Android Auto™

■ OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA'S TOTAL LIABILITY TO YOU FOR ALL DAMAGES (OTHER THAN AS MAY BE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW IN CASES INVOLVING PERSONAL INJURY) EXCEED THE AMOUNT OF FIVE DOLLARS ($5.00). THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

About Open Source Licenses

To see the open source license information, follow these steps.

Models with color audio system

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Settings**, then press ⟲.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **License**, then press ⟲.

Models with Display Audio

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detail Information**.
6. Select **About device**.
7. Select **Legal information**.
8. Select **Open source licenses**.

About Open Source Licenses

Models with color audio system

LICENSE: Copyright © 2001 Bob Trower, Trantor Standard Systems Inc.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

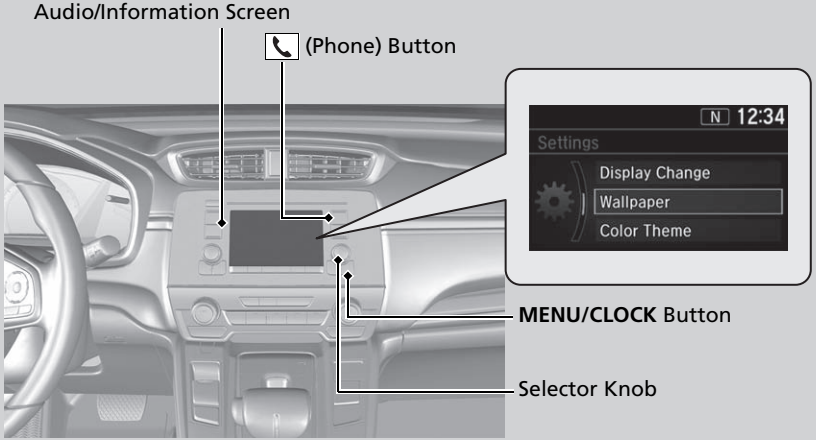
THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

Models with color audio system

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the ignition switch in ON (II), press the **MENU/CLOCK** button, then select **Settings**. To customize the phone settings, press the (Phone) button, then select **Phone Setup**.



Customized Features

When you customize settings:
- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

How to customize

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.
Rotate to select.
Press to enter.

To customize other features, select **Settings**, rotate , then press .

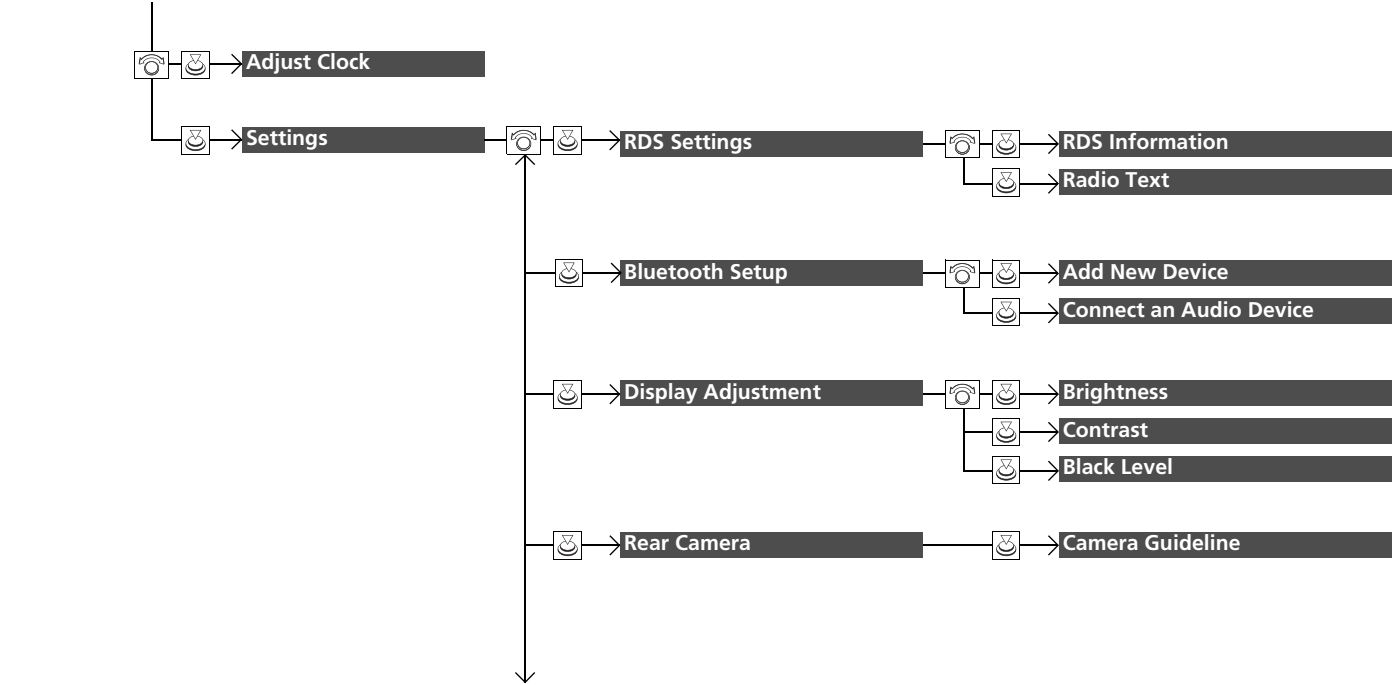
➡ **List of customizable options** P. 353

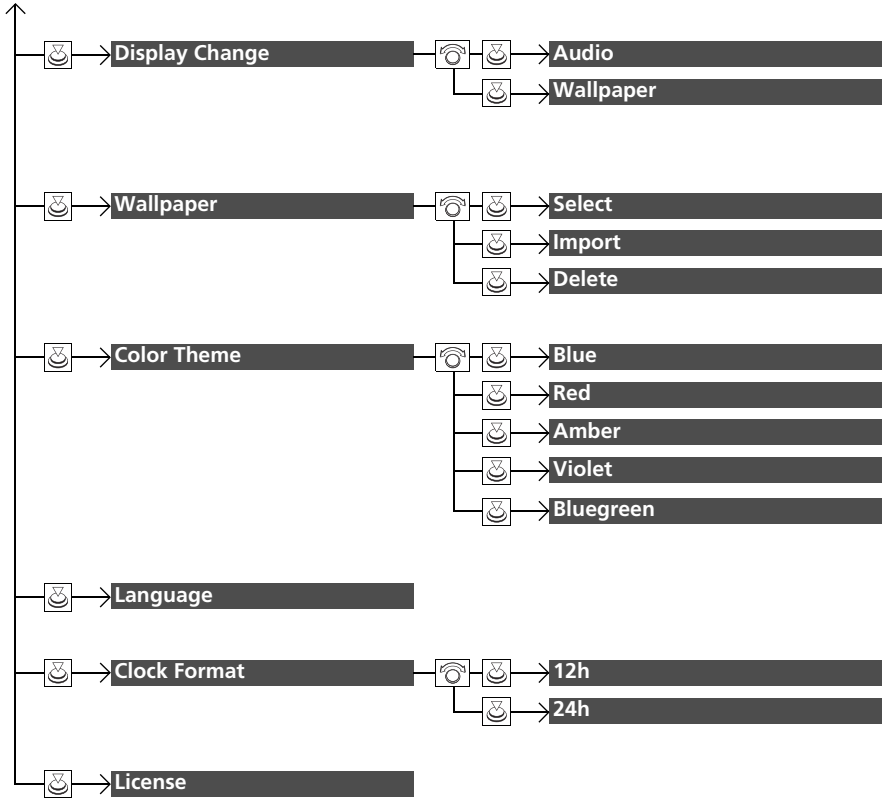
Continued

Models with color audio system

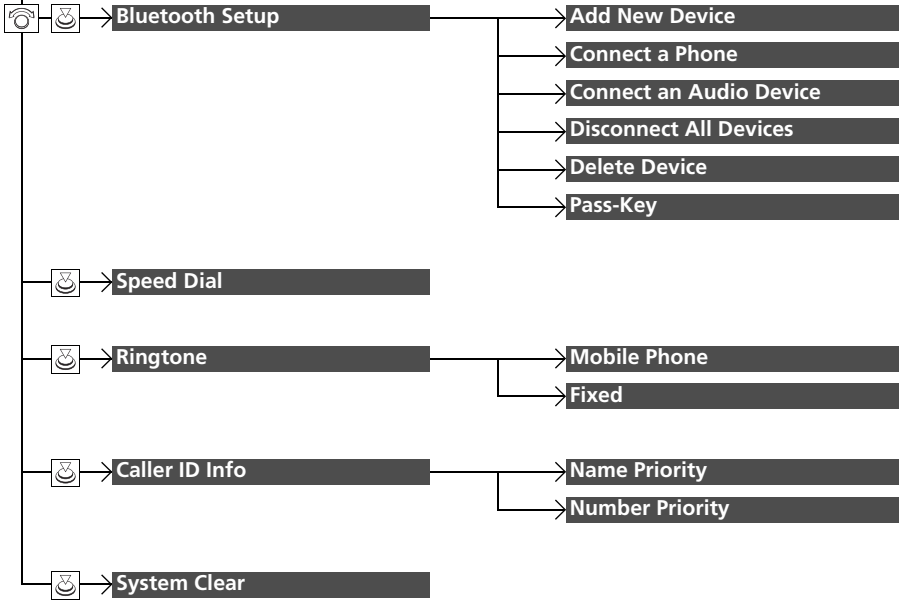
■ Customization Flow

Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.




Display Change
Audio
Wallpaper
Wallpaper
Select
Import
Delete
Color Theme
Blue
Red
Amber
Violet
Bluegreen
Language
Clock Format
12h
24h
License

Press the button and rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .



Models with color audio system

■ **List of customizable options**

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust Clock			Adjust Clock. ➡ **Clock** P. 130	—
Settings	**RDS Settings**	**RDS Information**	Selects whether the RDS information comes on.	**On***1**/Off**
		Radio Text	Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.	—
	Bluetooth Setup	**Add New Device**	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a code for a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 391	—
		Connect an Audio Device	Connects, disconnects or pairs a *Bluetooth*® Audio device to HFL.	—
	Display Adjustment	**Brightness**	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
		Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
		Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
	Rear Camera	**Camera Guideline**	Selects whether the guidelines come on the audio/information screen.	**On***1**/Off**

*1:Default Setting

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Settings	**Display Change**		Changes the display type.	**Audio**[*1]**/Wallpaper**
	Wallpaper	**Select**	Changes the wallpaper type.	**Clock**[*1]**/Image 1/Image 2/ Image 3**
		Import	Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. ➡ **Wallpaper Setup** P. 240	—
		Delete	Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	**Image 1/Image 2/Image 3**
	Color Theme		Changes the background color of the audio/ information screen.	**Blue**[*1]**/Red/Amber/Violet/ Bluegreen**
	Language		Changes the display language.	**English**[*1]**/French/Spanish**
	Clock Format		Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	**12h**[*1]**/24h**
	License		Shows the legal information.	—

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Phone Setup	**Bluetooth Setup**	**Add New Device**	Pairs a new phone to HFL. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 391	—
		Connect a Phone	Pairs a new phone or connects a paired phone to HFL. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 391	—
		Connect an Audio Device	Connects a *Bluetooth*® Audio device to HFL.	—
		Disconnect All Devices	Disconnects a paired phone from HFL.	—
		Delete Device	Deletes a paired phone.	—
		Pass-Key	Inputs and changes a code for a paired phone.	—
	Speed Dial		Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ➡ **Speed Dial** P. 399	—
	Ringtone		Selects the ring tone.	**Mobile Phone**[*1]**/Fixed**
	Caller ID Info		Prioritizes the caller's name or phone number as the caller ID.	**Name Priority**[*1]**/Number Priority**
	System Clear		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Phone Setup** group as default.	—

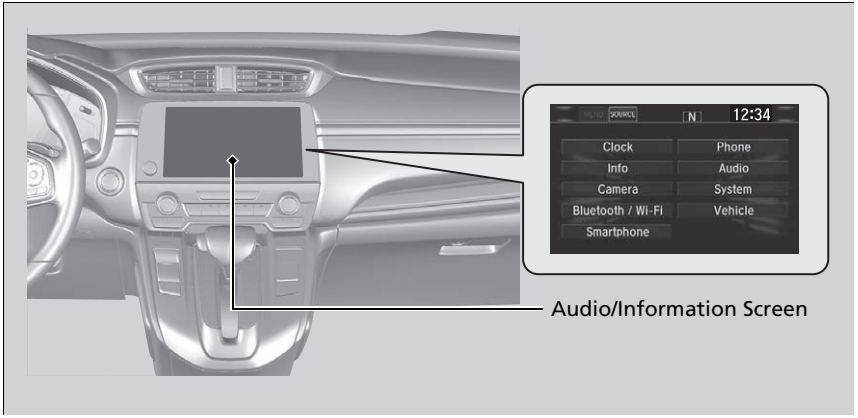
*1:Default Setting

Continued

Models with Display Audio

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, select HOME, and **Settings**, then select a setting item.



Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

To customize other features, select **Settings**.

List of customizable options P. 365

Models with Display Audio

■ Customization flow

Select **Settings**.

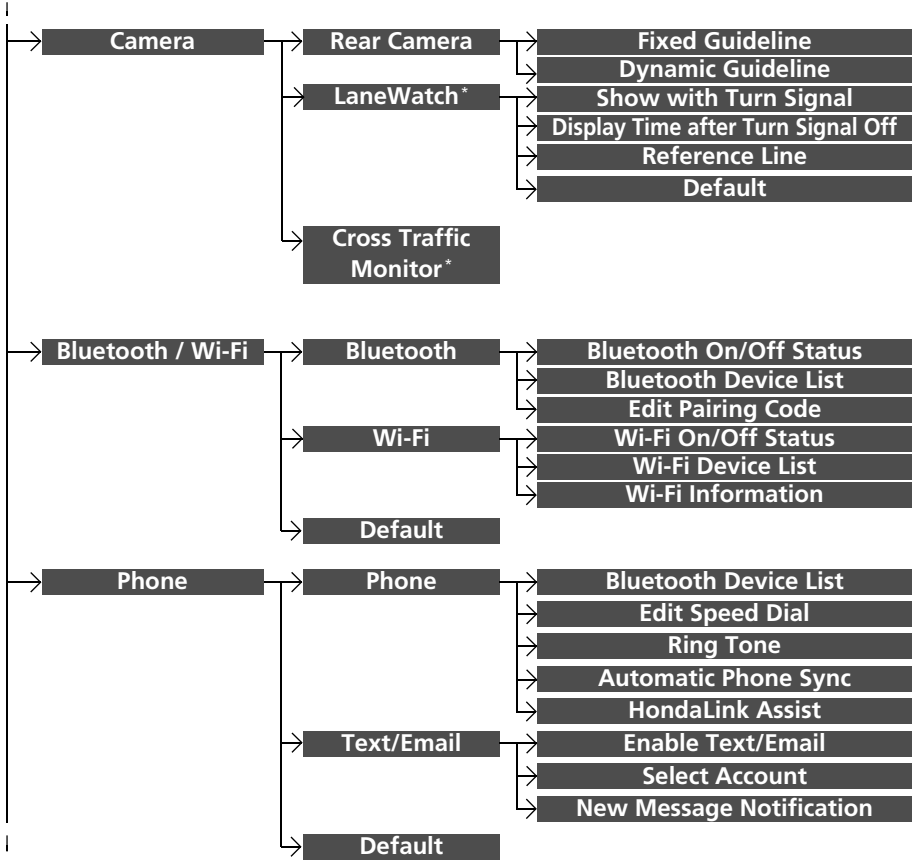


- Clock
  - Clock
    - Clock/Wallpaper Type*1/Clock Type*2
      - Clock
      - Wallpaper
    - Clock Adjustment
    - Auto Time Zone*
    - Manual Time Zone*
    - Auto Daylight Saving Time
    - Clock Format
    - Clock Display
    - Overlay Clock Location
    - Clock Reset
  - HondaLink
    - Diagnostic & Location Data
  - Others
    - Info Screen Preference
  - Default
- Info
  - Clock
    - Clock/Wallpaper Type*1/Clock Type*2
      - Clock
      - Wallpaper
    - Clock Adjustment
    - Auto Time Zone*
    - Manual Time Zone*
    - Auto Daylight Saving Time
    - Clock Format
    - Clock Display
    - Overlay Clock Location
    - Clock Reset
  - HondaLink
    - Diagnostic & Location Data
  - Others
    - Info Screen Preference
  - Default

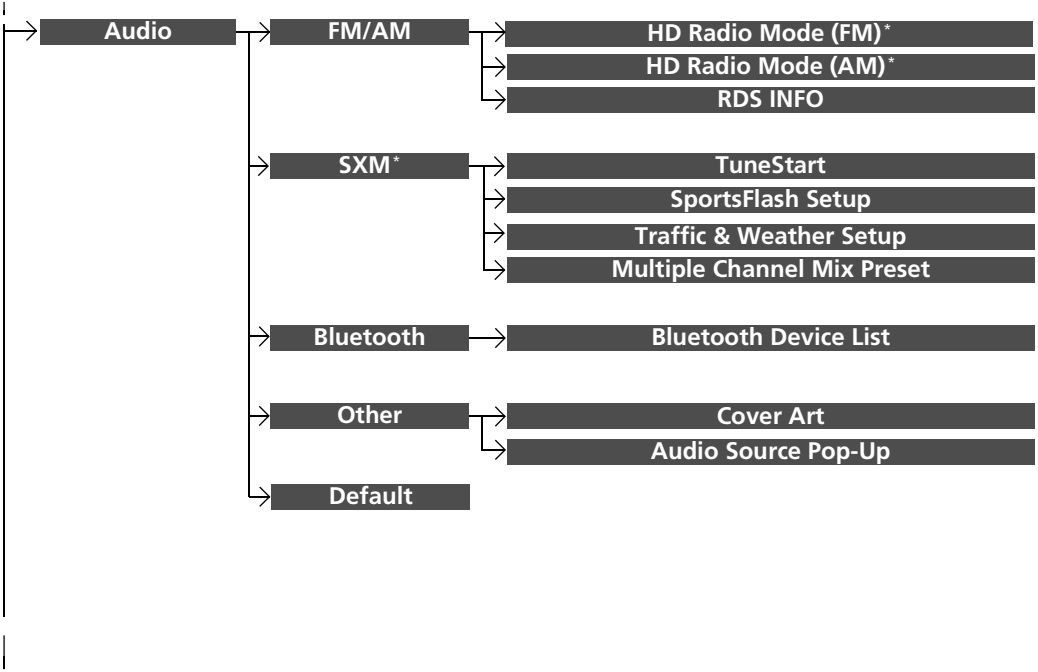
*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

Continued

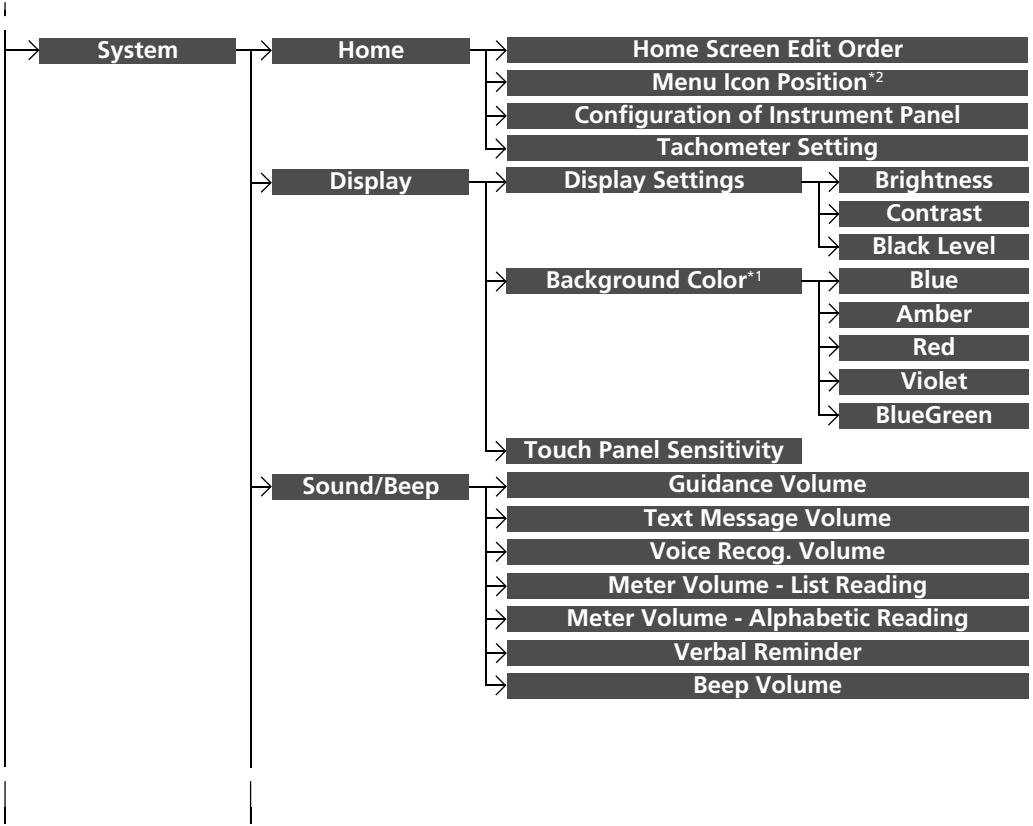


* Not available on all models

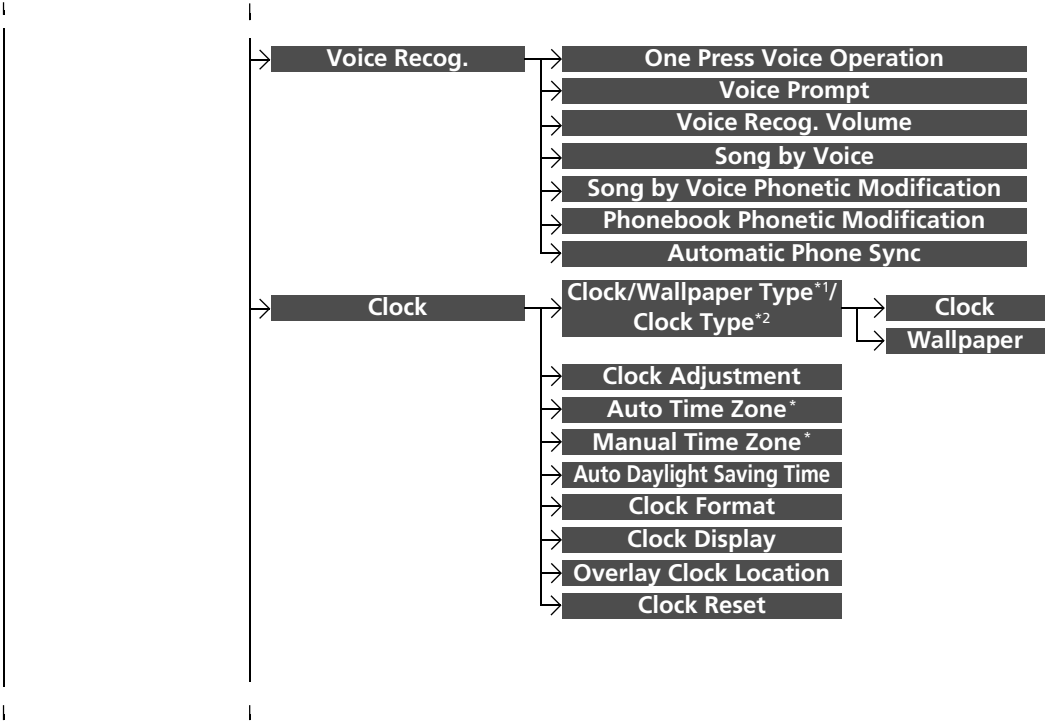


* Not available on all models

Continued



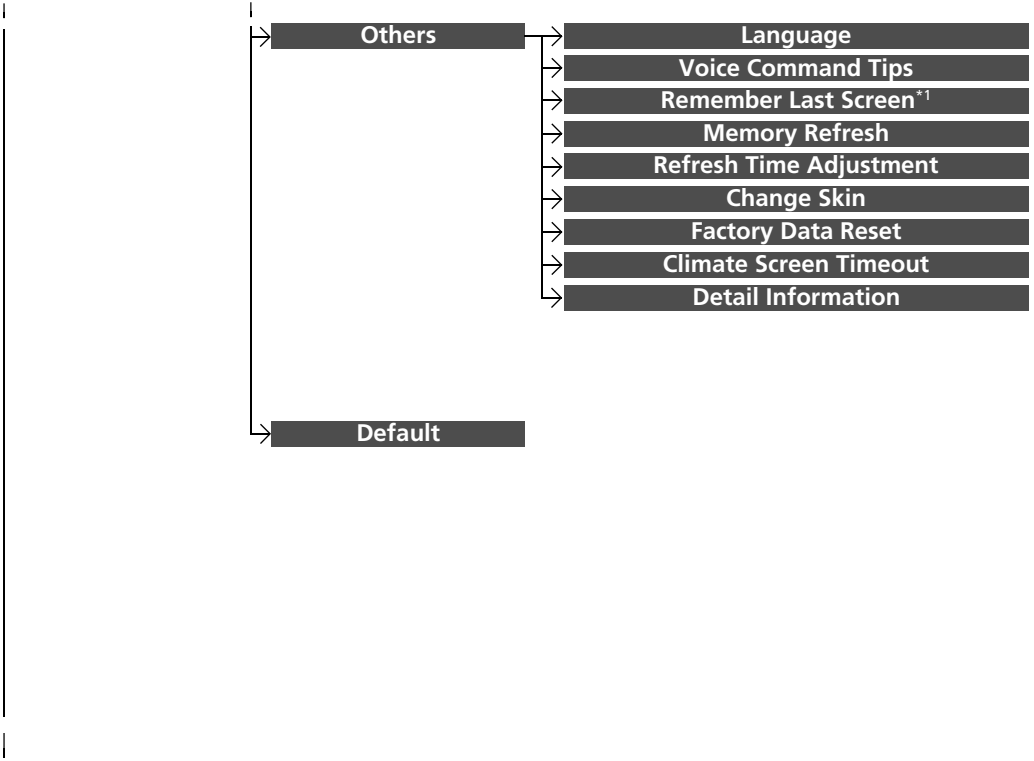
*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.



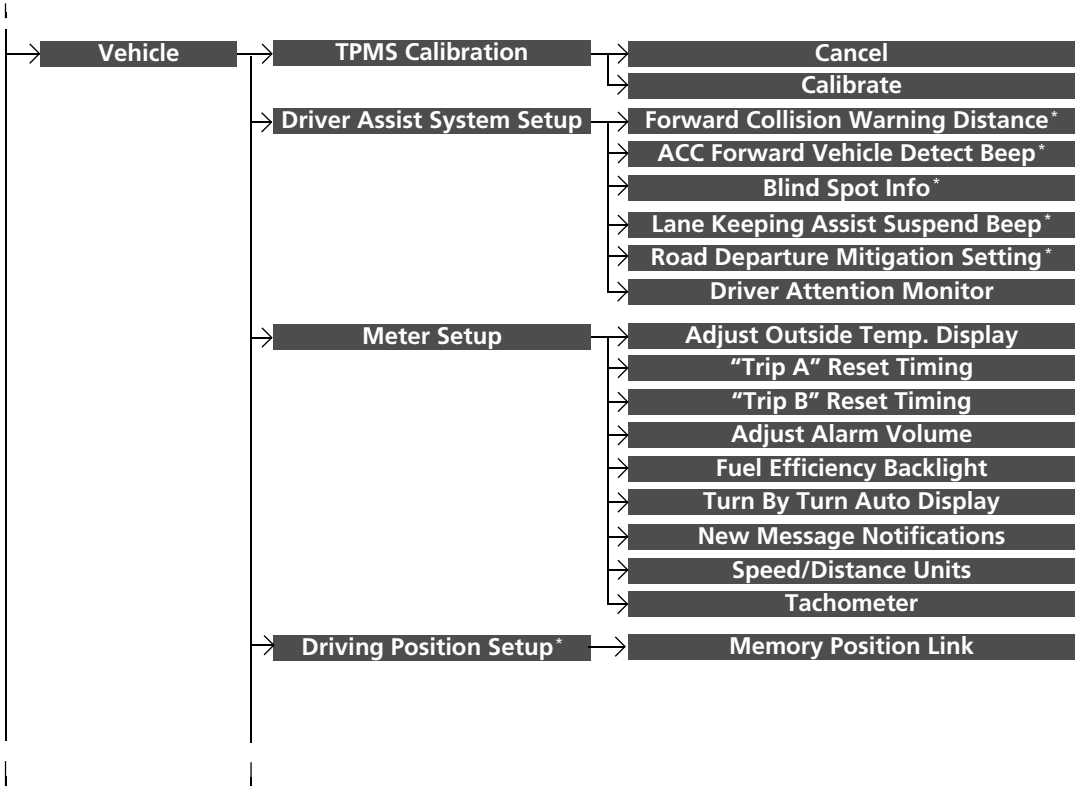
*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

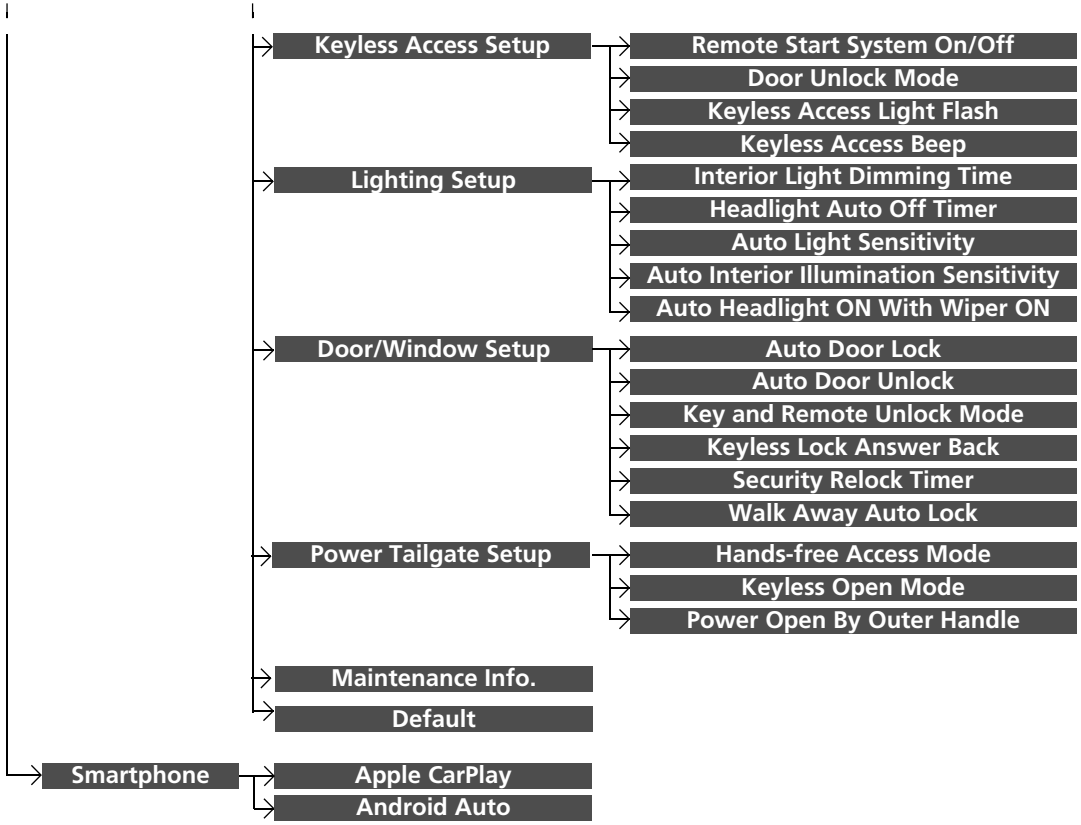
Continued



*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.



* Not available on all models


Keyless Access Setup
Remote Start System On/Off
Door Unlock Mode
Keyless Access Light Flash
Keyless Access Beep
Lighting Setup
Interior Light Dimming Time
Headlight Auto Off Timer
Auto Light Sensitivity
Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity
Auto Headlight ON With Wiper ON
Door/Window Setup
Auto Door Lock
Auto Door Unlock
Key and Remote Unlock Mode
Keyless Lock Answer Back
Security Relock Timer
Walk Away Auto Lock
Power Tailgate Setup
Hands-free Access Mode
Keyless Open Mode
Power Open By Outer Handle
Maintenance Info.
Default
Smartphone
Apple CarPlay
Android Auto

Models with Display Audio

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Clock	**Clock**	**Clock/ Wallpaper Type*1/Clock Type*2**	**Clock**	See **Info** on P. 366	
			Wallpaper		
		Clock Adjustment			
		Auto Time Zone*			
		Manual Time Zone*			
		Auto Daylight Saving Time			
		Clock Format			
		Clock Display			
		Overlay Clock Location			
		Clock Reset			
	HondaLink	**Diagnostic & Location Data**			
	Others	**Info Screen Preference**			
	Default			Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Clock** settings group as default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*2:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Info	**Clock**	**Clock/ Wallpaper Type**[*2]/ **Clock Type**[*3] **Clock**	Changes the clock display type.	**Analog/Digital**[*1]/ **Small Digital/Off**
		Clock/ Wallpaper Type[*2]/ **Clock Type**[*3] **Wallpaper**	• Changes the wallpaper type. • Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. • Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	**Blank/Galaxy**[*1]/ **Metallic/Time Zone**
		Clock Adjustment	Adjusts Clock.	—
		Auto Time Zone*	Automatically adjusts the clock when driving through different time zones.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Manual Time Zone*	Changes the time zone manually.	—
		Auto Daylight Saving Time	Select **On** to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock to daylight savings time. Select **Off** to cancel this function.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Clock Format	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	**12H**[*1]/**24H**
		Clock Display	Selects whether the clock display comes on.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Overlay Clock Location	Changes the clock display layout.	**Upper Right**[*1]/**Upper Left/Lower Right/ Lower Left/Off**
		Clock Reset	Resets the clock settings to the factory default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting
*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*3:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Info	**HondaLink**	**Diagnostic & Location Data**	Turns HondaLink® on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
	Others	**Info Screen Preference**	Selects the top menu when the [i] (display/information) button is pressed. • **Info Top**- A brief menu pops up. • **Info Menu**- A full menu pops up. • **Off**- A menu does not pop up.	**Info Top/Info Menu**[*1]**/Off**
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Info** settings group as default.	**Yes/No**
Camera	**Rear Camera**	**Fixed Guideline**	Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 546	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Dynamic Guideline	Selects whether the guidelines adjust to the movement of the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 546	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Rear Camera** setting group as default.	**Yes/No**
	LaneWatch*	**Show with Turn Signal**	Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a right turn.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Display Time after Turn Signal Off	Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after the turn signal lever returns to the center.	**0 second**[*1]**/2 seconds**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Camera	**LaneWatch***	**Reference Line**	Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor.	**On*1/Off**
		Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **LaneWatch** group as default.	**Yes/No**
	Cross Traffic Monitor*		Turns on and off the cross traffic monitor.	**On*1/Off**
Bluetooth / Wi-Fi	**Bluetooth**	**Bluetooth On/Off Status**	Changes the *Bluetooth*® status.	**On*1/Off**
		Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 416	—
		Edit Pairing Code	Edits a pairing code. ➡ **To change the pairing code setting** P. 417	**Random/Fixed*1**
	Wi-Fi	**Wi-Fi On/Off Status**	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	**On/Off*1**
		Wi-Fi Device List	Connects, disconnects, or deletes the Wi-Fi device.	—
		Wi-Fi Information	Shows the Wi-Fi information of the head unit.	—
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi** group as default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Phone	**Phone**	**Bluetooth Device List**	Pairs a new phone to HFL, connects or disconnects a paired phone. **Phone Setup** P. 416	—
		Edit Speed Dial	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. **Speed Dial** P. 422	—
		Ring Tone	Selects the ring tone.	**Fixed/Mobile Phone***1
		Automatic Phone Sync	Sets a phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.	**On***1**/Off**
		HondaLink Assist	Turns HondaLink Assist on and off.	**On***1**/Off**
	Text/Email	**Enable Text/Email**	Turns the text/e-mail message function on and off.	**On***1**/Off**
		Select Account	Selects a text or e-mail message account.	—
		New Message Notification	Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail message.	**On/Off***1
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Phone** settings group as default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	FM/AM mode **FM/AM**	**HD Radio Mode (FM)* HD Radio Mode (AM)***		Selects whether the audio system automatically switches to the digital radio waves or receives the analog waves only.	**Auto*1/Analog only**
		RDS INFO		Turns on and off the RDS information.	**On*1/Off**
	SiriusXM® mode **SXM***	**TuneStart**		Turns on and off, starts the song from the beginning as you change preset stations.	**On*1/Off**
		SportsFlash Setup	**Interrupt**	Turns on and off the sports alert function.	**Off*1/On(One Time)/ On(Continue)**
			Favorite Team	Selects your favorite sports teams. ➡ **Live Sports Alert** P. 296	—
			Interrupt Beep	Causes the system to beep when the sports alert is notified.	**On*1/Off**
		Traffic & Weather Setup		Selects the region you want to receive the information.	—
		Multiple Channel Mix Preset		Turns multiple channel mix preset on and off.	**On*1/Off**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	*Bluetooth*® mode **Bluetooth**	**Bluetooth Device List**	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 416	—
	Other	iPod or USB mode [Your selected media] **Cover Art**	Turns the cover art display on and off.	**On***1**/Off**
		Audio Source Pop-Up	Selects whether the list of selectable audio source comes on when **Audio** is selected on the home screen.	**On/Off***1
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Audio** settings group as default.	**Yes/No**
System	**Home**	**Home Screen Edit Order**	Changes the home screen icon layout.	—
		Menu Icon Position*2	Changes the position of the menu icons on the **Audio**, **Phone**, and **Info** screen.	—
		Configuration of Instrument Panel	Changes the **Instrument Panel** screen icon layout.	—
		Tachometer Setting	Turns on and off the tachometer display.	**On***1**/Off**

*1:Default Setting
*2:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
System	Display	Display Settings	**Brightness**	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
			Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
			Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
		Background Color[*2]		Changes the background color of the audio/information screen.	**Blue/Amber/Red/Violet/BlueGreen**[*1]
		Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	**High/Low**[*1]
	Sound/Beep	**Guidance Volume**		Changes the sound volume. Adjusts the guidance volume of the navigation system.	**1~6**[*1]**~11**
		Text Message Volume		Changes the text/e-mail message reading volume.	**1~6**[*1]**~11**

*1:Default Setting
*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Sound/ Beep	**Voice Recog. Volume**	Changes the volume of the voice prompt.	**1**~**6**[*1]~**11**
		Meter Volume - List Reading	Changes the list reading volume.	**1**~**6**[*1]~**11**
		Meter Volume - Alphabetic Reading	Changes the alphabetic reading volume.	**1**~**6**[*1]~**11**
		Verbal Reminder	Turns the verbal reminders on and off.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Beep Volume	Changes the beep volume.	**Off**/**1**/**2**[*1]/**3**
	Voice Recog.	**One Press Voice Operation**	Changes the setting of the (Talk) button operation when using the voice operation.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Voice Prompt	Turns the voice prompt on and off.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Voice Recog. Volume	Changes the volume of the voice prompt.	**1**~**6**[*1]~**11**
		Song by Voice	Turns the Song By Voice™ on and off.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Song by Voice Phonetic Modification	Modifies a voice command for music stored in the system or an iPod/iPhone. **Phonetic Modification** P. 303	—
		Phonebook Phonetic Modification	Modifies a voice command for the phonebook. **Phonetic Modification** P. 303	—
		Automatic Phone Sync	Sets phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.	**On**/**Off**

*1:Default Setting

Continued

Setup Group		Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	**Clock**	**Clock/Wallpaper Type**[*2]**/Clock Type**[*3]	**Clock**	See **Info** on P. 366	
			Wallpaper		
		Clock Adjustment			
		Auto Time Zone[*]			
		Manual Time Zone[*]			
		Auto Daylight Saving Time			
		Clock Format			
		Clock Display			
		Overlay Clock Location			
		Clock Reset			
	Others	**Language**		Change the display language.	**English (United States)**[*1]**/Français/ Español**
		Voice Command Tips		Alerts you when manual control of the system is disabled to prevent distraction while driving. Only voice commands are available.	**On**[*1]**/Off**

*1:Default Setting
*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*3:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Others	**Remember Last Screen**[*2]	Selects whether the device remembers the last screen.	**On/Off**[*1]
		Memory Refresh	Turns on the audio system automatically and restores the fragmentation of a memory when the power mode is VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Refresh Time Adjustment	Sets the time for **Memory Refresh**.	—
		Change Skin	Changes the screen interface design.	**Yes/No**
		Factory Data Reset	Resets all the settings to their factory default. **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 381	**Yes/No**
		Climate Screen Timeout	Changes the length of time the climate control display stays on when you press the **CLIMATE** button.	**Never/5 Seconds/10 Seconds**[*1]**/20 Seconds**
		Detail Information	Displays the details of the head unit and operating system information.	—
	Default		Cancels /Resets all customized items in the **System** group as default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting
*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	**TPMS Calibration**		Cancels/Calibrates the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).	**Cancel**[*1]**/Calibrate**
	Driver Assist System Setup	**Forward Collision Warning Distance**[*]	Changes CMBS™ alert distance.	**Long/Normal**[*1]**/Short**
		ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep[*]	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC range.	**On/Off**[*1]
		Blind Spot Info[*]	Changes the setting for the blind spot information.	**Audible and Visual Alert**[*1]**/Visual Alert/Off**
		Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep[*]	Causes the system to beep when LKAS is suspended.	**On/Off**[*1]
		Road Departure Mitigation Setting[*]	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	**Normal**[*1]**/Wide/Warning Only**
		Driver Attention Monitor	Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor.	**Tactile And Audible Alert**[*1]**/Tactile Alert/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	**Meter Setup**	**Adjust Outside Temp. Display**	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-5°F ~ ±0°F**[*1] **~ +5°F** (U.S.) **-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C** (Canada)
		"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and average fuel economy A.	**When Refueled/IGN Off/ Manually Reset**[*1]
		"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and average fuel economy B.	**When Refueled/IGN Off/ Manually Reset**[*1]
		Adjust Alarm Volume	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	**High/Mid**[*1]**/Low**
		Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Turn By Turn Auto Display	Selects whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		New Message Notifications	Used to select whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail message.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Speed/Distance Units	Selects the trip computer units.	**mph · miles**[*1]**/km/h · km** (U.S.) **km/h · km**[*1]**/mph · miles** (Canada)
		Tachometer	Selects whether the tachometer come on the driver information interface.	**On**[*1]**/Off**

*1:Default Setting

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	**Driving Position Setup***	**Memory Position Link**	Turns the driving position memory system on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
	Keyless Access Setup	**Remote Start System On/Off**	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Door Unlock Mode	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	**Driver Door Only**[*1]**/All Doors**
		Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Keyless Access Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
	Lighting Setup	**Interior Light Dimming Time**	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**60seconds/30seconds**[*1]**/15seconds**
		Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**60seconds/30seconds/15seconds**[*1]**/0seconds**
		Auto Light Sensitivity	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	**Max/High/Mid**[*1]**/Low/Min**
		Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**Min/Low/Mid**[*1]**/High/Max**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	**Lighting Setup**	**Auto Headlight ON With Wiper ON**	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
	Door/ Window Setup	**Auto Door Lock**	Used to change the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	**With Vehicle Speed**[*1]**/Shift from P/Off**
		Auto Door Unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically.	**All Doors When Driver's Door Opens**[*1]**/All Doors When Shifted to Park/All Doors When Ignition Switched Off/Off**
		Key and Remote Unlock Mode	Sets up the driver's door or all the doors to unlock on the first push of the remote.	**Driver Door**[*1]**/All Doors**
		Keyless Lock Answer Back	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	**90seconds/60seconds/ 30seconds**[*1]
		Walk Away Auto Lock	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	**On/Off**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

Continued

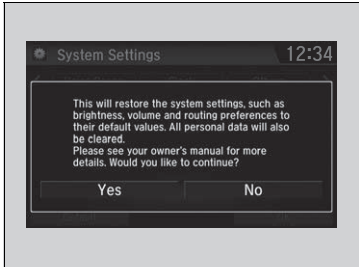
Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	**Power Tailgate Setup***	**Hands-free Access Mode**	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Keyless Open Mode	Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	**Anytime**[*1]**/When Unlocked**
		Power Open By Outer Handle	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle.	**Off (Manual only)/ On (Power/ Manual)**[*1]
	Maintenance Info.		Used to reset the engine oil life display when the maintenance service has been performed.	—
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Vehicle settings group as default.	**Yes/No**
Smartphone	**Apple CarPlay**		Sets up the Apple CarPlay™ connection.	—
	Android Auto		Sets up the Android Auto™ connection.	—

 * Not available on all models

Models with Display Audio

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Next**, then select **Yes** to reset the settings.
7. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **OK**.
   ▶ After selecting **OK**, the system will reboot.

Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, you cannot use the HondaLink® because it becomes off line.

HondaLink® P. 312

The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver can be programmed to operate up to three remote controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

Important Safety Precautions

Refer to the safety information that came with your garage door opener to test that the safety features are functioning properly. If you do not have the safety information, contact the manufacturer.

Before programming HomeLink, make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the garage or gate to prevent potential injury or damage.

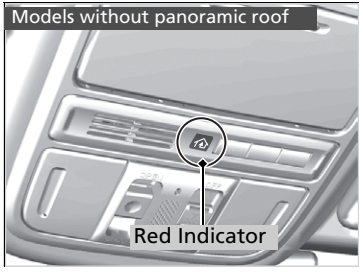
When programming a garage door opener, park just outside the garage door's path.

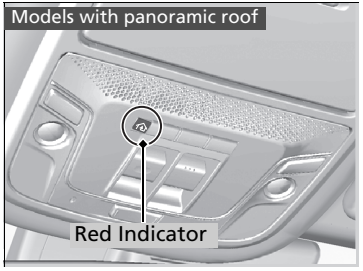
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver*

Before programming HomeLink to operate a garage door opener, confirm that the opener has an external entrapment protection system, such as an "electronic eye," or other safety and reverse stop features. If it does not, HomeLink may not be able to operate it.

 * Not available on all models

Training HomeLink





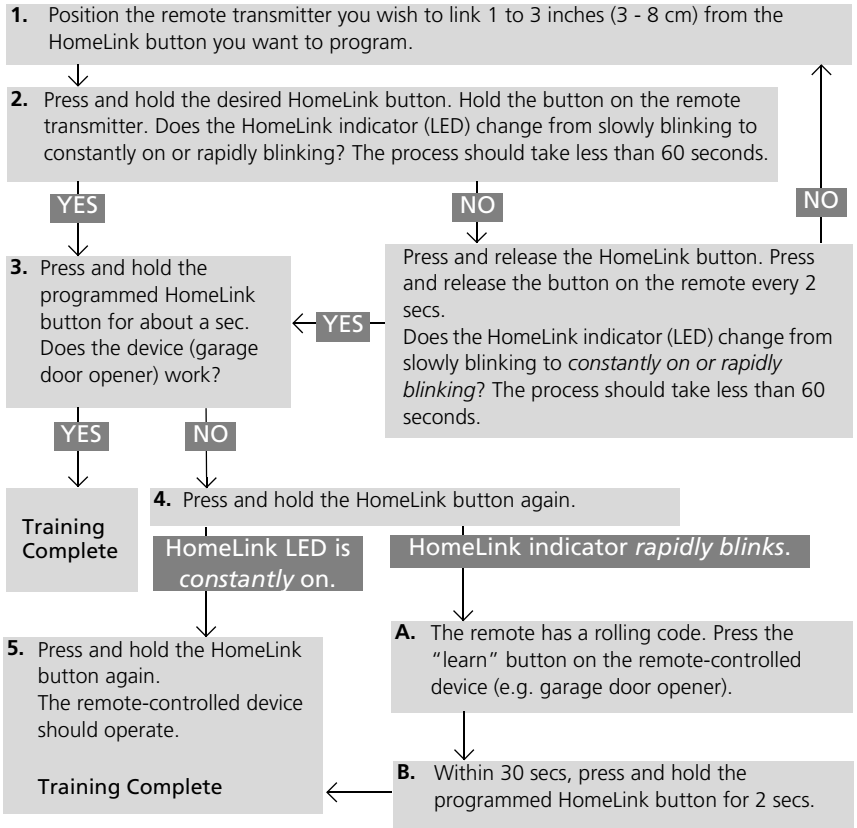
If it is necessary to erase a previously entered learned code:

- Press and hold the two outside buttons for about 20 seconds, until the red indicator blinks. Release the buttons, and proceed to step 1.
- If you are training the second or third button, go directly to step 1.

The instructions on the next page should work for most gate or garage openers, but may not work for all. For detailed instructions about your specific remote opener, visit *http://www.homelink.com* or call (800)355-3515.

Continued

Training a Button



Training HomeLink

Retraining a Button

If you want to retrain a programmed button for a new device, you do not have to erase all button memory. You can replace the existing memory code using this procedure:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink.

Standard transmitter	Rolling code transmitter
Indicator remains on for about 25 secs.	Indicator remains on for about 25 secs.

2. Quickly release the HomeLink button and follow steps 1 - 3 under "Training a Button." You do not need to press and release the HomeLink button again in step 2.

Erasing Codes

To erase all the codes, press and hold the two outside buttons until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink (about 10 to 20 secs). You should erase all codes before selling the vehicle.

If you have any problems, see the device's instructions, visit *www.homelink.com*, or call HomeLink at (800) 355-3515.

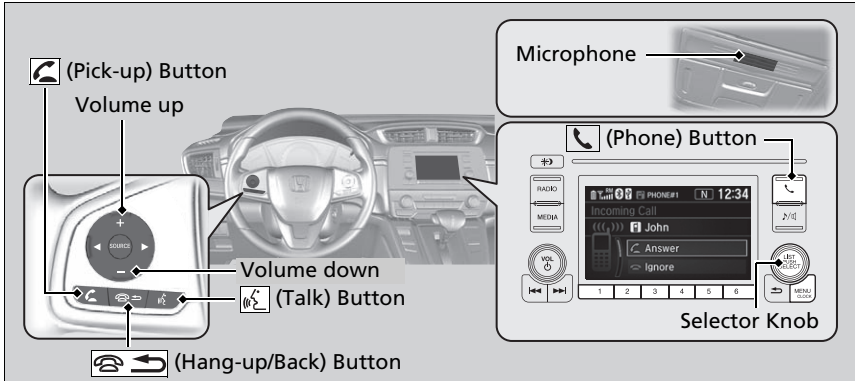
HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Models with color audio system

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

Using HFL

HFL Buttons



(Pick-up) button: Press to go directly to the phone screen or to answer an incoming call.

(Hang-up/back) button: Press to end a call or to cancel a command.

(Talk) button: Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.

(Phone) button: Press to go directly to the phone screen.

Selector knob: Rotate to select an item on the screen, then press .

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:
- U.S.: Visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528 -7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.

Voice control tips
- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press and release the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, use the audio system's volume knob or the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

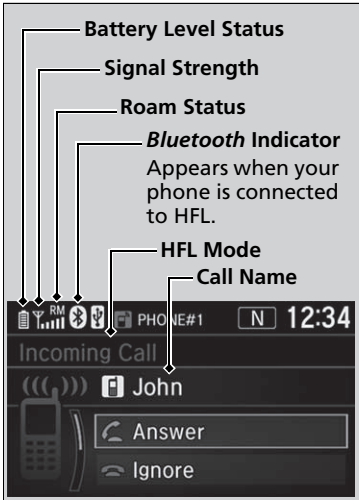
If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation after ending the call.

Up to 20 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.
Speed Dial P. 399

Up to 20 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

Continued

■ HFL Status Display



The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

Speed Dial P. 399

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

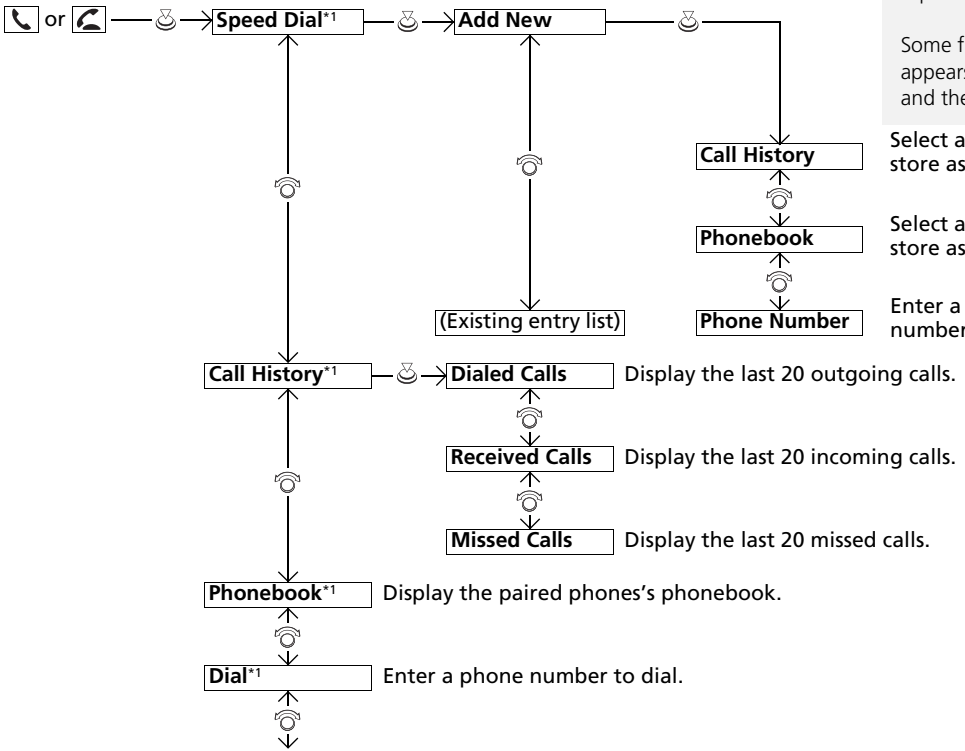
HFL Limitations
An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

HFL Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY I or ON II to use HFL.



*1 : Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

HFL Menus

To use HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

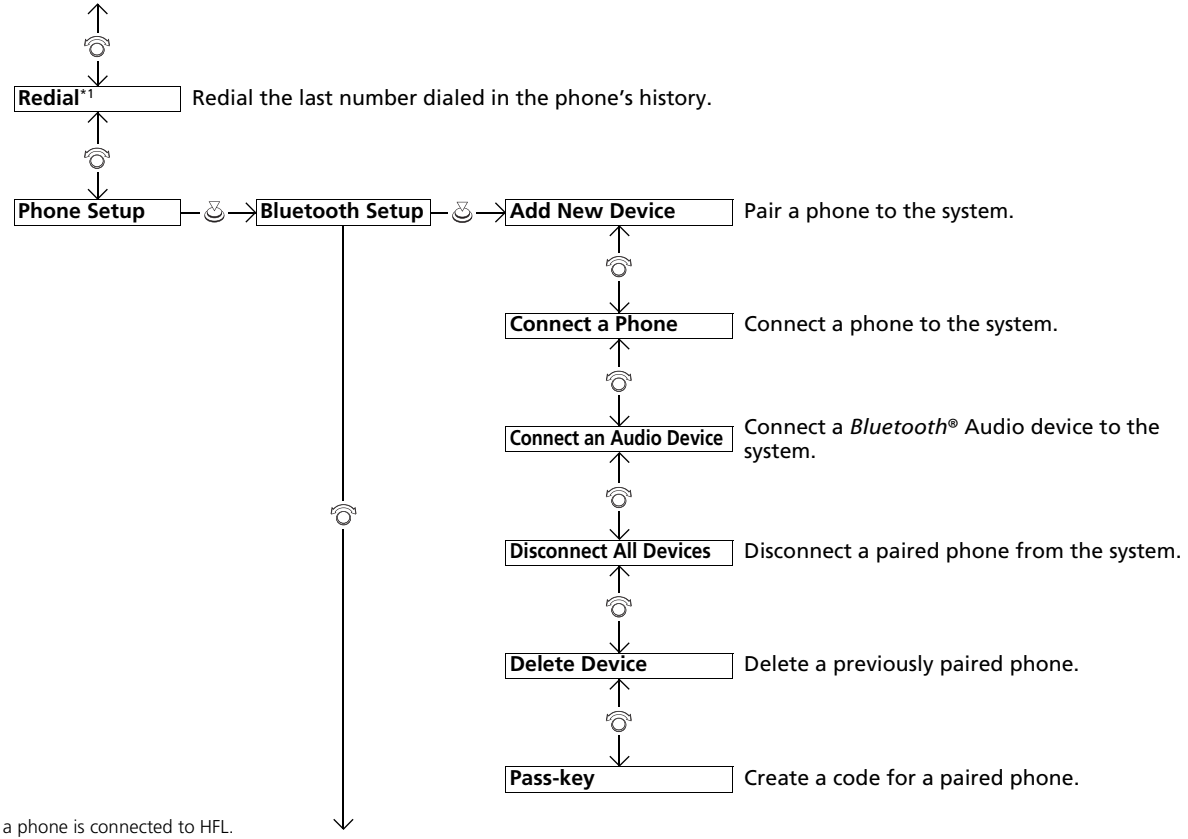
Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is canceled.

Call History: Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.

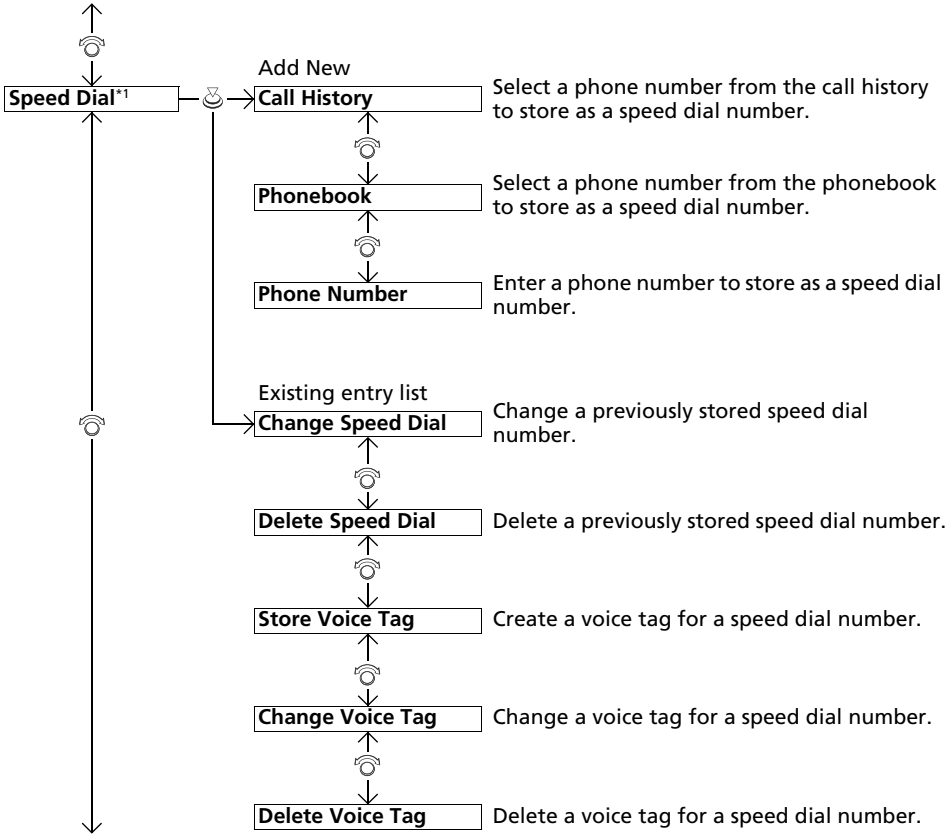
Phonebook: Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.

Phone Number: Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

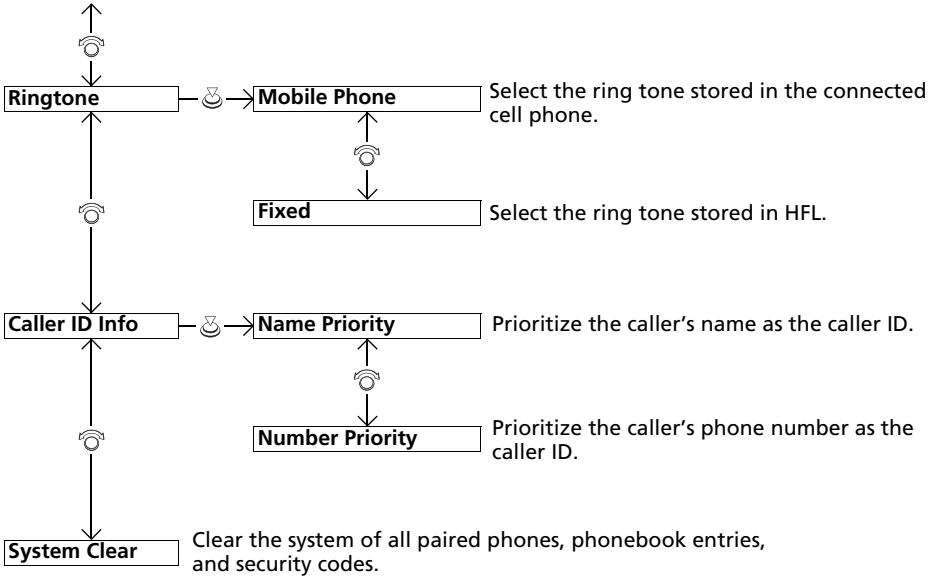
Continued



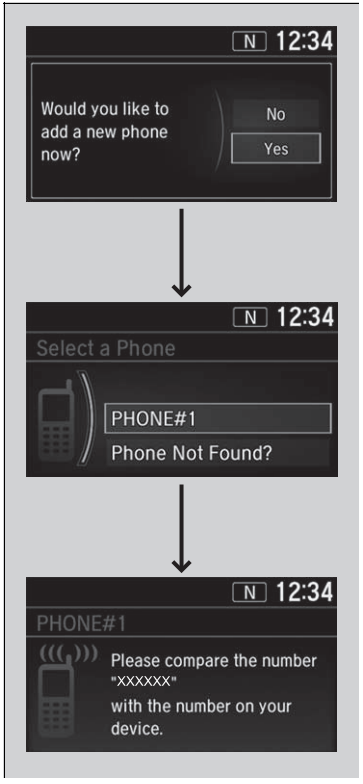
*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.



*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.


Ringtone
Mobile Phone
Select the ring tone stored in the connected cell phone.
Fixed
Select the ring tone stored in HFL.
Caller ID Info
Name Priority
Prioritize the caller's name as the caller ID.
Number Priority
Prioritize the caller's phone number as the caller ID.
System Clear
Clear the system of all paired phones, phonebook entries, and security codes.

Phone Setup



To pair a cell phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Yes**, then press ⊙.
3. Press ⊙ to select **OK**.
4. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
   ▶ HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
5. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing ⊙.
   ▶ If your phone doesn't appear, select **Phone Not Found?** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink®**.
6. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
   This may vary by phone.
7. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

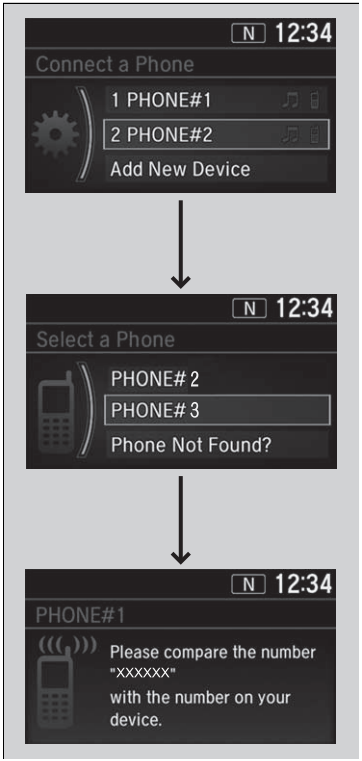
Continued

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFL before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFL.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within 30 seconds, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.
These icons indicate the following:
: The phone can be used with HFL.
: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.



■ **To pair a cell phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)**

1. Press the button or the button.

2. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

3. Rotate to select **Add New Device**, then press .

4. Press to select **OK**.

▶ The screen changes to device list.

5. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .

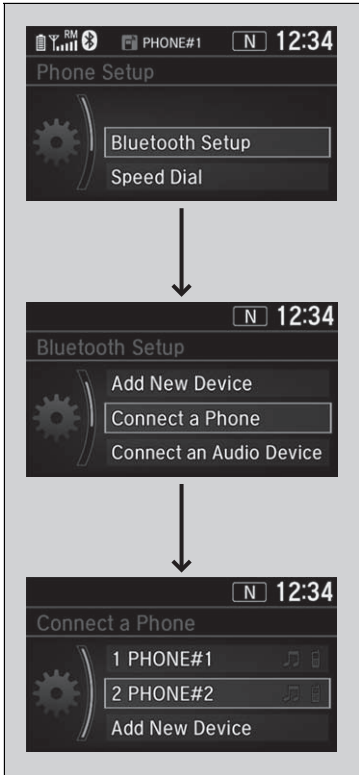
▶ HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.

6. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .

▶ If your phone does not appear, select **Phone Not Found?** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**®.

7. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.

▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by a phone.



■ **To change the currently paired phone**

1. Press the button or the button.

2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .

3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .

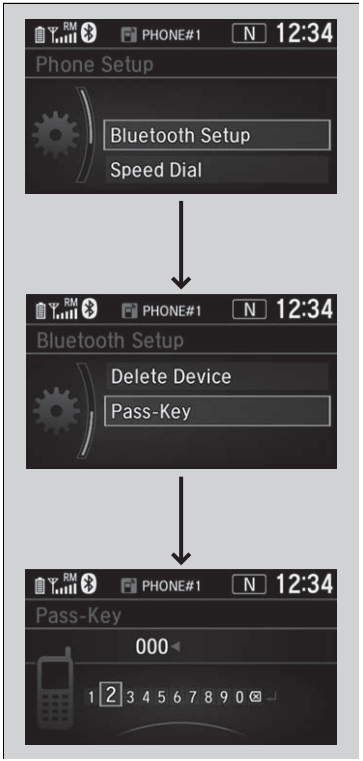
4. Rotate to select **Connect a Phone**, then press .

▶ The screen changes to a device list.

5. Rotate to select a desired device name, then press .

▶ HFL disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.

Continued



■ **To change the pairing code setting**

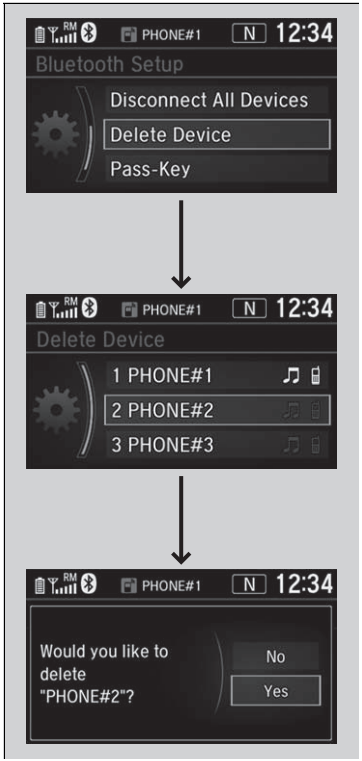
1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.

2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .

3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .

4. Rotate to select **Pass-Key**, then press .

5. Input a new pairing code, then press .



■ **To delete a paired phone**

1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.

2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ⟲.

3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press ⟲.

4. Rotate ⟲ to select **Delete Device**, then press ⟲.
▶ The screen changes to a device list.

5. Rotate ⟲ to select a phone you want to delete, then press ⟲.

6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate ⟲ to select **Yes**, then press ⟲.

Continued

■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Ringtone**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Mobile Phone** or **Fixed**, then press .

Ring Tone

Mobile Phone: For certain connected phones, the ring tone stored in the phone sounds from the speakers.
Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

■ Caller's ID Information

You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.



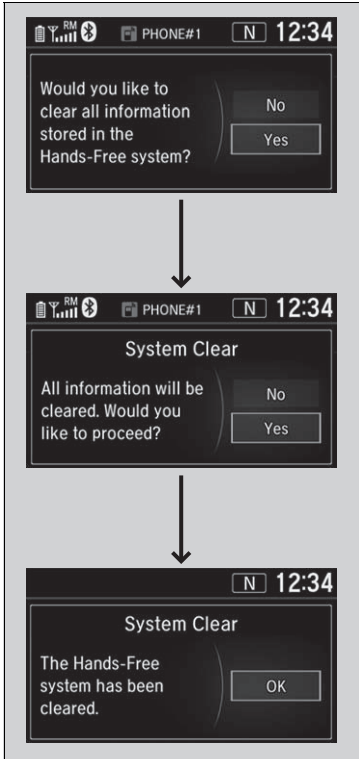
1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Caller ID Info**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a mode you want, then press .

Caller's ID Information

Name Priority: A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.
Number Priority: A caller's phone number is displayed.

To Clear the System

Pairing codes, paired phones, all stored voice tags, all speed dial entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data are erased.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **System Clear**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
6. A notification appears on the screen. Press .

Continued

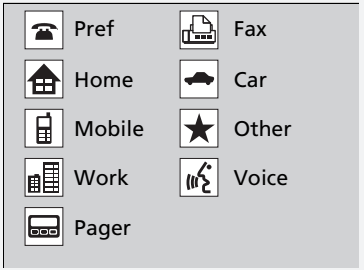
■ Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFL.



Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



If a name has four or more numbers, ... appears instead of category icons.

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFL.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.





To store a speed dial number:

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Add New**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a place to choose a number from, then press .
   From **Call History**:
   ▶ Select a number from the call history.
   From **Phonebook**:
   ▶ Select a number from the connected cell phone's imported phonebook.
   From **Phone Number**:
   ▶ Input the number manually.
5. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Rotate to select **Yes** or **No**, then press .
6. Using the button, follow the prompts to say the name for the speed dial entry.

Speed Dial

When any preset button is pressed, the **Speed Dial** screen is displayed.

When a voice tag is stored, you can press the button and call the number using voice commands.

Continued



■ **To edit a speed dial**

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Change Speed Dial**, then press .
6. Select a new speed dial number, then press .



■ **To delete a speed dial number**

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Delete Speed Dial**, then press .
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .



■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Store Voice Tag**, then press .
6. Using the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.



■ To change a voice tag

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Change Voice Tag**, then press .
6. Using the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "*home*" as a voice tag.
It is easier for HFL to recognize a longer name. For example, use "*John Smith*" instead of "*John*."

Continued

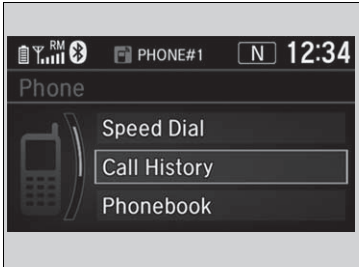


■ **To delete a voice tag**

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Delete Voice Tag**, then press .
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

■ Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.



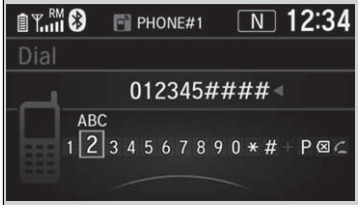
Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.
Press the button and follow the prompts.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

Features





■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to HFL.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
3. The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Rotate to select the initial, then press .
4. Rotate to select a name, then press .
5. Rotate to select a number, then press .

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
4. Rotate to select , then press .

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the imported phonebook

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

➡ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 386
➡ **Speed Dial** P. 399

To make a call using a phone number

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

➡ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 386
➡ **Speed Dial** P. 399

Continued



■ To make a call using redial

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Redial**, then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using redial

Press and hold the button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's call history.



■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, and **Missed Calls**.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, or **Missed Calls**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to HFL, and displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.



■ **To make a call using a speed dial entry**

1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.

2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Speed Dial**, then press ⊙.

3. Rotate ⟲ to select a number, then press ⊙.

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a speed dial entry

When any preset button is pressed, the **Speed Dial** screen is displayed.

Select **Others** to view another paired phone's speed dial list.

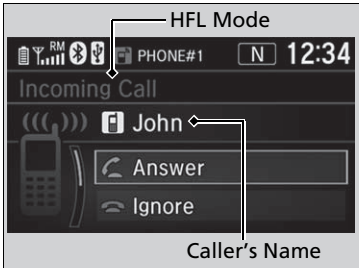
When a voice tag is stored, press the [ ] button and call the number using voice commands.

➡ **Speed Dial** P. 399

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen. Press the [ ] button and follow the prompts.

Continued

■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming Call** screen appears.

Press the button to answer the call.
Press the button to decline or end the call.

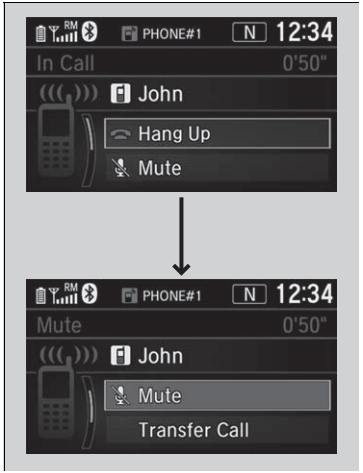
Receiving a Call

Call Waiting
Press the button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Press the button again to return to the current call.
Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the and buttons.
Rotate to select the icon, then press .

■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.
Swap Call: Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Transfer Call: Transfer a call from HFL to your phone.
Dial Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



1. To view the available options, press the button.
2. Rotate to select the option, then press .
   ▶ The check box is checked when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

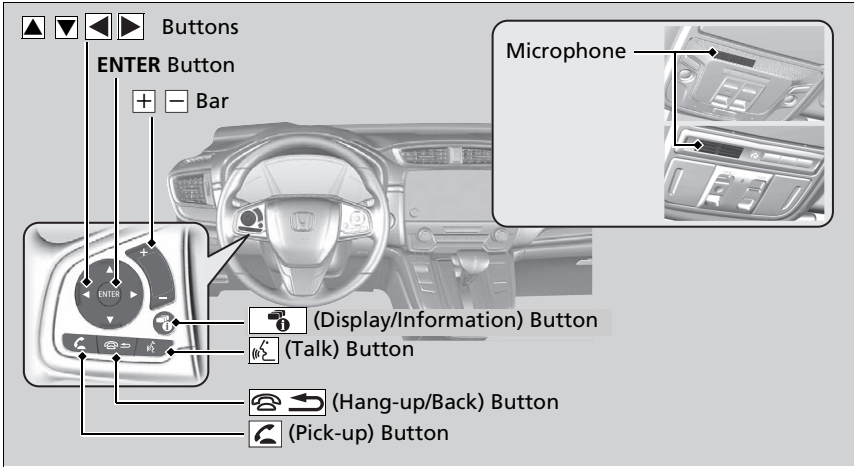
Dial Tones: Available on some phones.

Models with Display Audio

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

Using HFL

HFL Buttons



Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:
- U.S.: Visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528 -7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay™ or Android Auto™, HFL is unavailable.
How to customize P. 349

Voice control tips
- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

Up to three speed dial entries can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered.
Speed Dial P. 422

Up to three previous calls can be displayed at a time among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

(Pick-up) button: Press to go directly to the phone menu on the driver information interface, or to answer an incoming call.

(Hang-up/back) button: Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.

(Talk) button: Press to access Voice Portal.

buttons: Press to select an item displayed on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

ENTER button: Press to call a number listed in the selected item on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

(display/information) button: Select and press **ENTER** to display **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Phonebook** on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

To go to the **Phone Menu** screen:

1. Select PHONE to switch the display to the phone screen.
2. Select **MENU**.

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

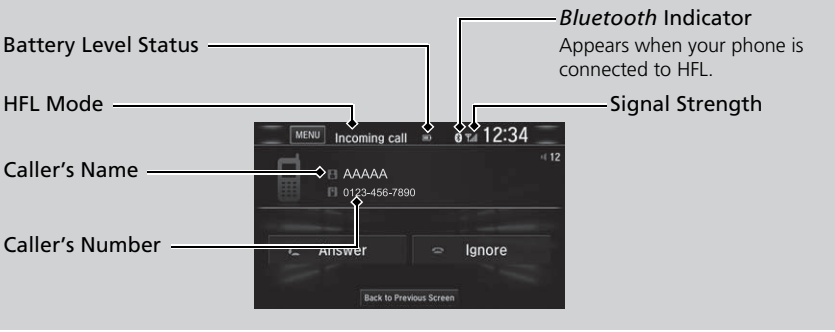
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFL Limitations
An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

Continued

■ HFL Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

Speed Dial P. 422

HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

HFL Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system.

HFL Menus

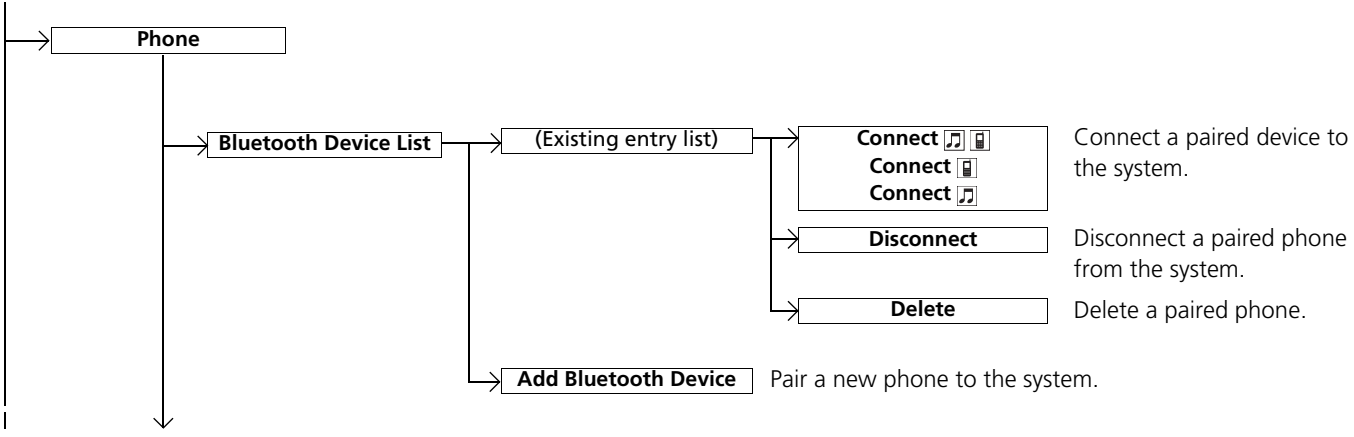
To use HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.

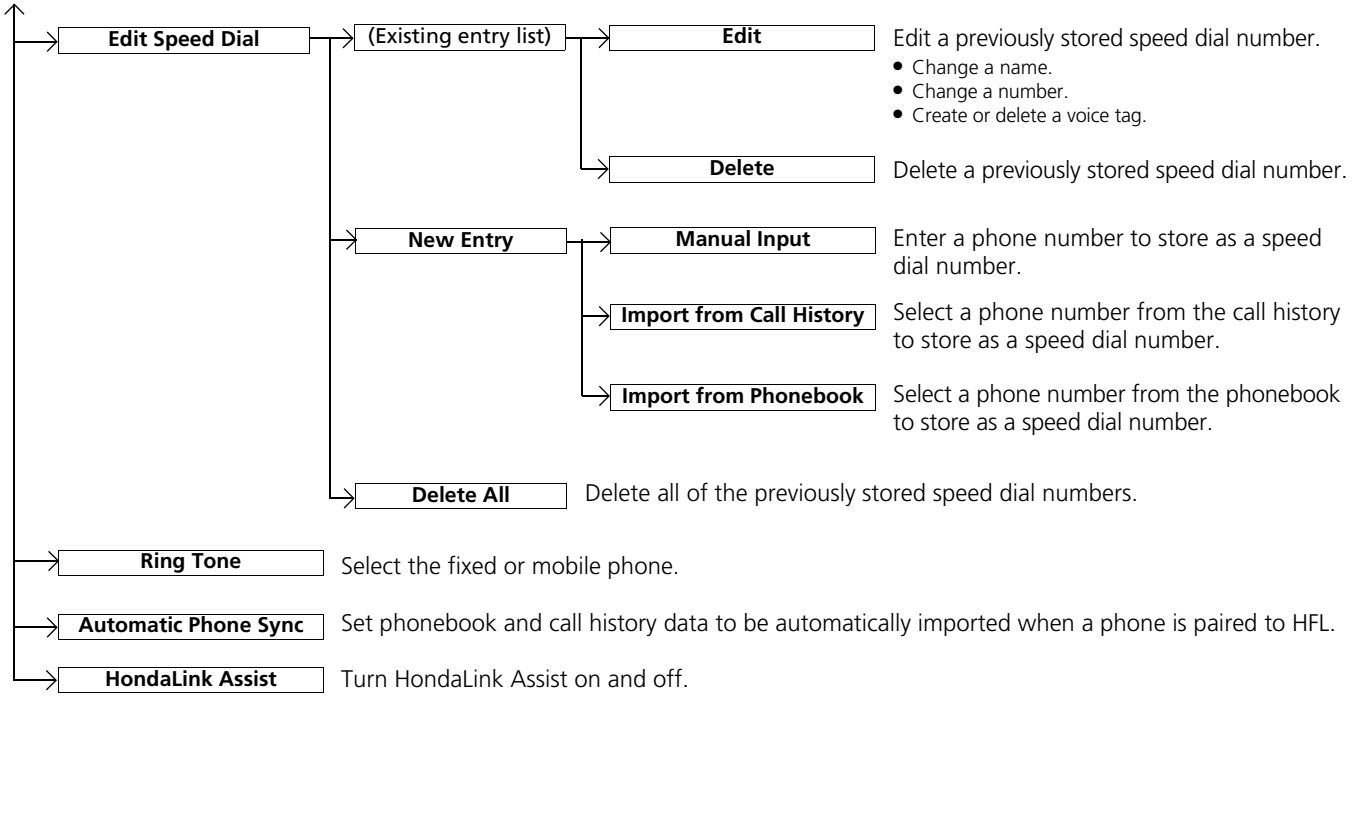
■ Phone Settings screen

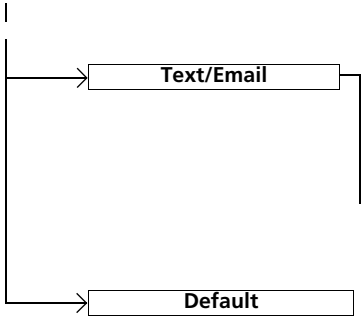


1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Phone**.



Continued


Edit Speed Dial
(Existing entry list)
Edit
Edit a previously stored speed dial number.
• Change a name.
• Change a number.
• Create or delete a voice tag.
Delete
Delete a previously stored speed dial number.
New Entry
Manual Input
Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.
Import from Call History
Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
Import from Phonebook
Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
Delete All
Delete all of the previously stored speed dial numbers.
Ring Tone
Select the fixed or mobile phone.
Automatic Phone Sync
Set phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.
HondaLink Assist
Turn HondaLink Assist on and off.



Enable Text/Email — Turn the text/e-mail message function on and off.

Select Account — Select a mail or text message account.

New Message Notification — Select whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail message.

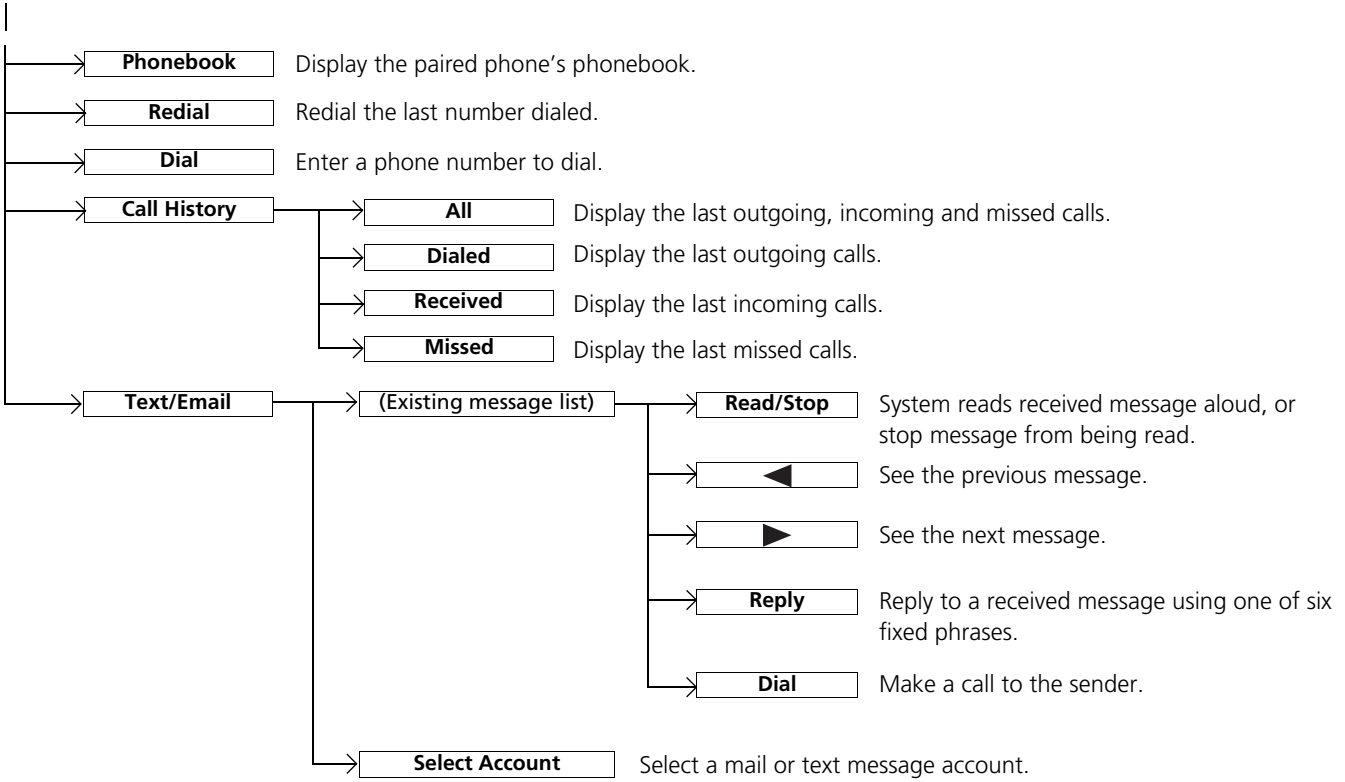
Default — Cancel/Reset all customized items in the **Phone Settings** group as default.

■ Phone Menu screen

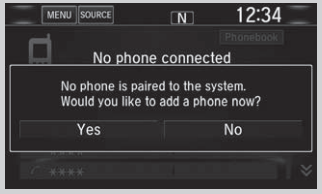


1. Select PHONE.
2. Select **MENU**.

- **Speed Dial**
  - **(Existing entry list)** — Dial the selected number in the speed dial list.
  - **New Entry**
    - **Manual Input** — Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Call History** — Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Phonebook** — Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
- **Edit Speed Dial**
  - **(Existing entry list)** — Dial the selected number in the speed dial list.
  - **New Entry**
    - **Manual Input** — Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Call History** — Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Phonebook** — Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.


Phonebook
Display the paired phone's phonebook.
Redial
Redial the last number dialed.
Dial
Enter a phone number to dial.
Call History
All
Display the last outgoing, incoming and missed calls.
Dialed
Display the last outgoing calls.
Received
Display the last incoming calls.
Missed
Display the last missed calls.
Text/Email
(Existing message list)
Read/Stop
System reads received message aloud, or stop message from being read.
◀
See the previous message.
▶
See the next message.
Reply
Reply to a received message using one of six fixed phrases.
Dial
Make a call to the sender.
Select Account
Select a mail or text message account.

■ Phone Setup







■ To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Select PHONE.
2. Select **Yes**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select **Continue**.
   ▶ HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
4. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
   ▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
   ▶ If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone Not Found** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, search for **HandsFreeLink**.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
   This may vary by phone.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.
These icons indicate the following:
: The phone can be used with HFL.
: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay™, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*-compatible devices is unavailable and **Add Bluetooth Device** is grayed out from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.



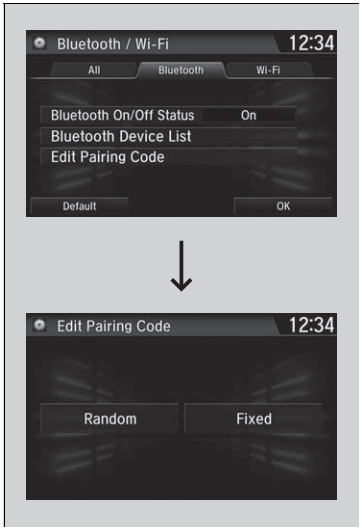
■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 411
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
   ▶ HFL disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
4. Select **Connect** , **Connect** , or **Connect** .

To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFL will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **Add Bluetooth Device** from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.



■ To change the pairing code setting

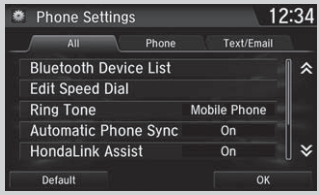
1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Bluetooth** tab.
5. Select **Edit Pairing Code**.
6. Select **Random** or **Fixed**.

To change the pairing code setting

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.
To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.

Continued





■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 411

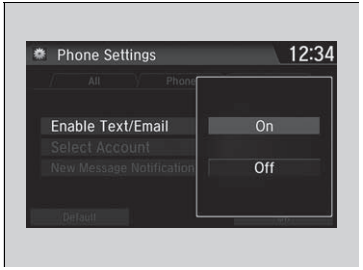
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.

3. Select a phone you want to delete.

4. Select **Delete**.

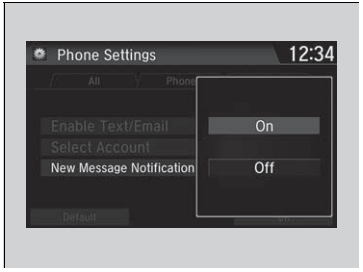
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

To Set Up Text Message/E-mail Options



To turn on or off the text/e-mail function

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   Phone Settings screen P. 411
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Enable Text/Email**.
3. Select **Next**.
   ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **On** or **Off**.



To turn on or off the text/e-mail notice

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   Phone Settings screen P. 411
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **New Message Notification**.
3. Select **Next**.
   ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **On** or **Off**.

To Set Up Text Message/E-mail Options

To use the text message/e-mail function, it may be necessary to set up on your phone.

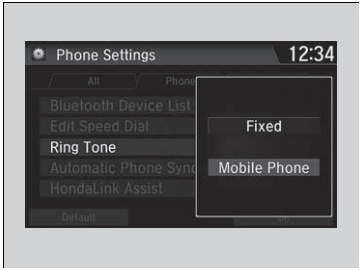
To turn on or off the text/e-mail notice

On: A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new message.
Off: The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.

Continued

■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.

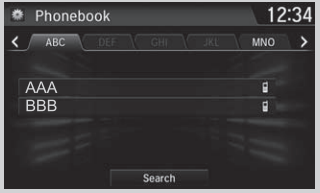


1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   Phone Settings screen P. 411
2. Select **Ring Tone**.
3. Select **Next**, then select **Fixed** or **Mobile Phone**.

Ring Tone

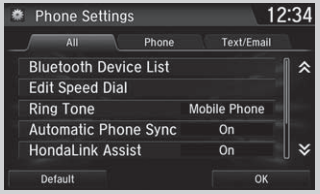
Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.
Mobile Phone: For certain connected phones, the ring tone stored in the phone sounds from the speakers.

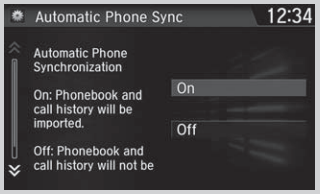
Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History



When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.



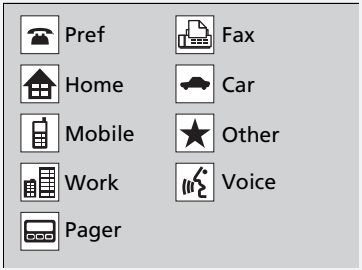


Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 411
2. Select **Automatic Phone Sync**.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a name from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

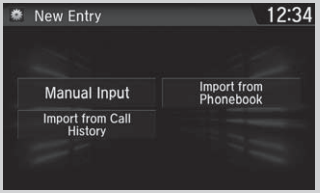
The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Continued

■ Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.







To store a speed dial number:

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
   Phone Menu screen P. 414
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select **New Entry**.
   From **Import from Call History**:
   ▶ Select a number from the call history.
   From **Manual Input**:
   ▶ Input the number manually.
   From **Import from Phonebook**:
   ▶ Select a number from the connected cell phone's imported phonebook.
4. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.
5. Select **Record**, or use the button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

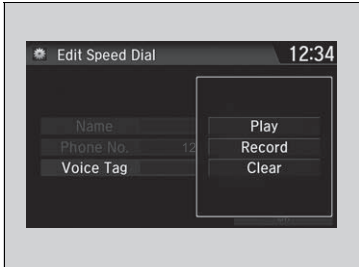
Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag. Say the voice tag name.



■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 411
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
5. Select **Record**, or use the button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.



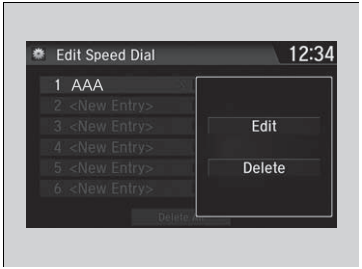
■ To delete a voice tag

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 411
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "*home*" as a voice tag.
It is easier for the system to recognize a longer name.
For example, use "*John Smith*" instead of "*John*."

Continued



■ **To edit a speed dial**

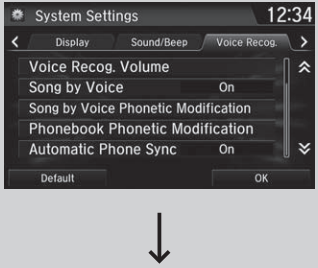
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 411
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select a setting you want.

■ **To delete a speed dial**

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 411
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

■ Phonebook Phonetic Modification

Add phonetic modifications or a new voice tag to the phone's contact name so that it is easier for HFL to recognize voice commands.



■ To add a new voice tag

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to add phonetic modification to.

Phonebook Phonetic Modification

You can store up to 20 phonetic modification items.

Continued



7. Select **New Voice Tag**.

8. Select a contact name you want to add to.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

9. Select **Modify**.
10. Using **Record** or the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
11. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.



■ To modify a voice tag

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to modify phonetic modification.
7. Select a contact name you want to modify.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
8. Select **Modify**.
9. Using **Record** or the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
10. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.

Phonebook Phonetic Modification

You can only modify or delete contact names for the currently connected phone.

Continued

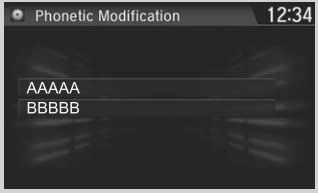


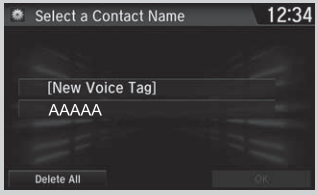
■ **To delete a modified voice tag**

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.

6. Select the phone for which you want to delete phonetic modification.
7. Select a contact name you want to delete.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

8. Select **Delete**.
▶ The selected contact name has been selected.
9. Select **OK**.





■ **To delete all modified voice tags**

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification.
   ▶ The contact name list appears.
7. Select **Delete All**.
8. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **Yes**.

■ Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

Making a Call

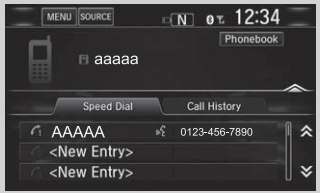
Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from most screens.

Press the button and say the voice tag name.

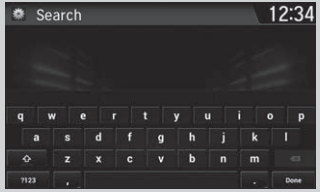
Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay™, phone calls can be made only from Apple CarPlay™.

Continued







■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Select PHONE.

2. Select **Phonebook**.

3. Select a name.
- ▶ You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.
- ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering name, if multiple numbers exist select a number.

4. Select a number.
- ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the imported phonebook

You can also select **Phonebook** on the **Phone Menu** screen.



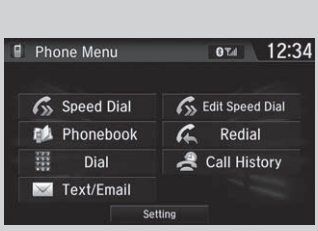
■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
➡ **Phone Menu screen** P. 414

2. Select **Dial**.

3. Select a number.
▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.

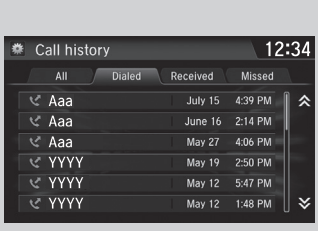
4. Select .
▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ To make a call using redial

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
➡ **Phone Menu screen** P. 414

2. Select **Redial**.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ To make a call using the Call History

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
➡ **Phone Menu screen** P. 414

2. Select **Call History**.

3. Select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**.

4. Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the Call History

The call history displays the last 20 all, dialed, received, or missed calls.
(Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)

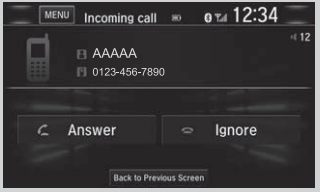
Continued



■ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
➡ **Phone Menu screen** P. 414
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the button to answer the call.
Press the button to decline or end the call.

To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag.
➡ **Speed Dial** P. 422

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.
Press the button and follow the prompts.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting
Press the button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Press the button again to return to the current call.
Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the and buttons.

Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Transfer: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.
Touch Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.
▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

Touch Tones: Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

Continued

■ Receiving a Text Message/E-mail

HFL can display newly received text or e-mail messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a linked cell phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.



1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text message or e-mail.

2. Select **Read** to listen to the message.
▶ The text message or e-mail is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.

3. To discontinue the message read-out, select **Stop**.

Receiving a Text Message/E-mail

The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

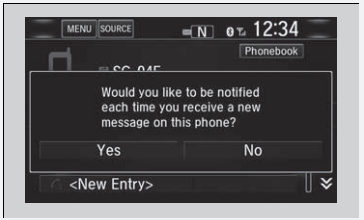
The system can only receive massages that are sent as text (SMS) messages. Messages sent using the data services will not be displayed in the list.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text messages and e-mails.

State or local laws may limit your use of the HFL text message/e-mail feature. Only use the text message/e-mail feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

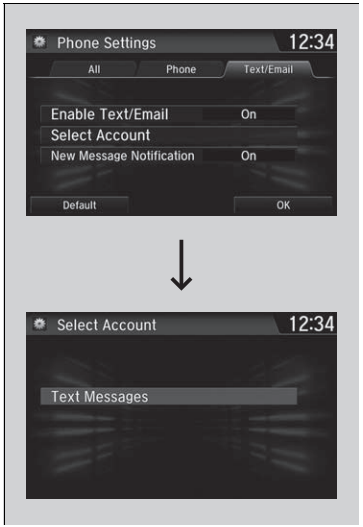
When you receive a text message or e-mail for the first time since the phone is paired to HFL, you are asked to turn the **New Message Notification** setting to **On**.

To turn on or off the text/e-mail notice
P. 419



Selecting a Mail Account

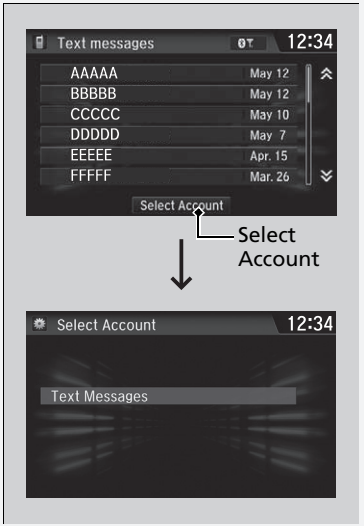
If a paired phone has text message or mail accounts, you can select one of them to be active and receive notifications.



1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   Phone Settings screen P. 411
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Select Account**.
   ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Text Messages** or an e-mail account you want.

Selecting a Mail Account

You can also select a mail account from the folder list screen or the message list screen.

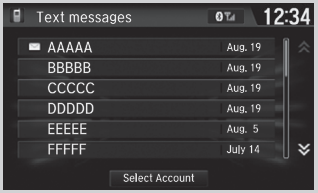


You can only receive notifications from one text message or mail account at a time.

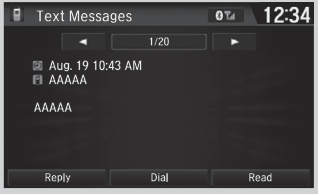
Continued

■ Displaying Messages

Message List



Text Message



■ Displaying text messages

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
➡ **Phone Menu screen** P. 414

2. Select **Text/Email**.
▶ Select account if necessary.

3. Select a message.
▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

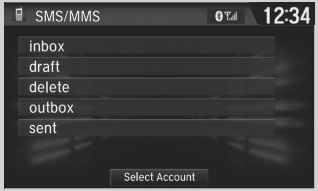
Displaying Messages

The ✉ icon appears next to an unread message.

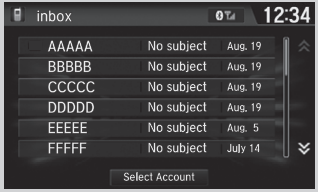
If you delete a message on the phone, the message is also deleted in the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's outbox.

To see the previous or next message, select ◀ (previous) or ▶ (next) on the message screen.

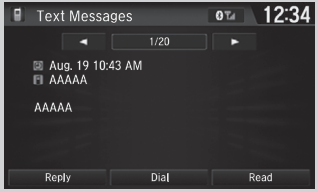
Folder List



Message List



E-mail



■ Displaying e-mails

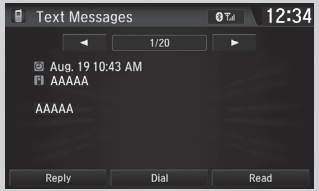
1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
➡ **Phone Menu screen** P. 414

2. Select **Text/Email**.
▶ Select **Select Account** if necessary.

3. Select a folder.

4. Select a message.
▶ The e-mail is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

Continued



■ Read or Stop reading a message

1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
➡ **Displaying Messages** P. 436
2. Select **Stop** to stop reading.
Select **Read** again to start reading the message from the beginning.



■ Reply to a message

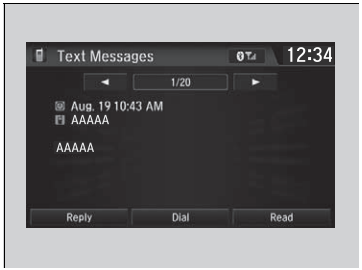
1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
➡ **Displaying Messages** P. 436
2. Select **Reply**.
3. Select the reply message.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Send** to send the message.
▶ **Complete** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:
- **Talk to you later, I'm driving.**
- **I'm on my way.**
- **I'm running late.**
- **OK**
- **Yes**
- **No**

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.

Only certain phones receive and send messages when paired and connected. For a list of compatible phones:
- U.S.: Visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.



■ **Making a call to a sender**

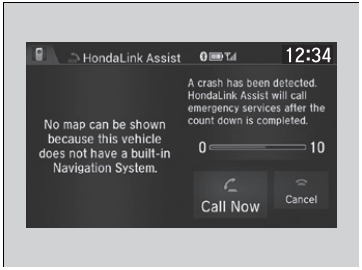
1. Go to the text message screen.

2. Select **Dial**.

Continued

■ In Case of Emergency

■ Automatic collision notification



If your vehicle's airbags deploy or if the unit detects that the vehicle is severely impacted, your vehicle automatically will attempt to connect to the HondaLink operator. If connected, information about your vehicle, its location, and its condition can be sent to the operator*1; you also can speak to the operator when connected.

IMPORTANT: For vehicles equipped with HondaLink Assist, owner activation constitutes authorization for Honda to collect information from your vehicle needed to provide the service, and agreement to the Terms of Use at *www.hondalink.com/TermsAndConditions*. In a crash, HondaLink Assist will attempt to notify emergency services but NEITHER Honda-PRO NOR ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS GUARANTEE THAT SUCH NOTIFICATION WILL OCCUR.

Honda reserves the right to terminate HondaLink Assist services at any time or for any reason, and in the future may not be able to provide services due to changes in, or obsolescence of, technology integral to the service or changes in governmental regulation.

*1: Depending on your phone and adequate cellular coverage, your vehicle's location may not be sent to the operator.

In Case of Emergency

Your vehicle may not be able to connect to the operator if the battery level is low, the line is disconnected, or you do not have adequate cellular coverage.

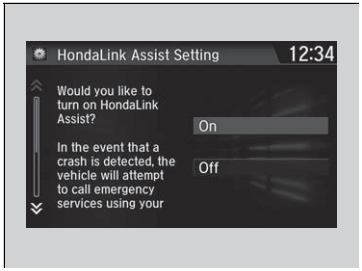
You cannot use this emergency service when:
- You travel outside the HondaLink service coverage areas.
- There is a problem with the connecting devices, such as the microphones, speakers, or the unit itself.

You cannot operate other phone-related functions using the screen while talking to the operator. Select **Hang Up** to terminate the connection to your vehicle.

Automatic collision notification

If the unit fails to connect to the operator, it repeatedly tries until it succeeds.

■ To enable notification



1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   Phone Settings screen P. 411
2. Select the **Phone** tab, then **HondaLink Assist**.
   ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

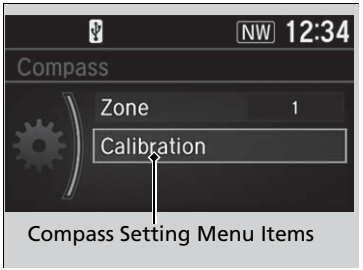
To enable notification

Setting options:
- **On:** Notification is available.
- **Off:** Disable the feature.

When you turn the ignition switch to ON II, the compass self-calibrates, and the compass display appears.

Compass Calibration

If the compass indicates the wrong direction, or the **CAL** indicator blinks, you need to manually calibrate the system.



Compass Setting Menu Items

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II.
2. Press and hold the ☀/☽ (day/night) button until the display shows the compass setting menu.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Calibration**, then press ⊙.



4. When the display changes to **Push CAL Start**, press ⊙.
5. Drive the vehicle slowly in two circles.
   ▶ The compass starts to show a direction after the calibration. The **CAL** indicator goes off.

Compass*

Compass operation can be affected under the following conditions:
- Driving near power lines or stations
- Crossing a bridge
- Passing a large vehicle, or driving near a large object that can cause a magnetic disturbance
- When accessories such as antennas and roof racks are mounted by magnets

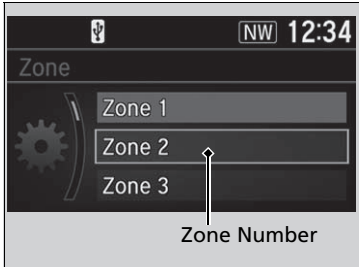
Compass Calibration

Calibrate the compass in an open area.

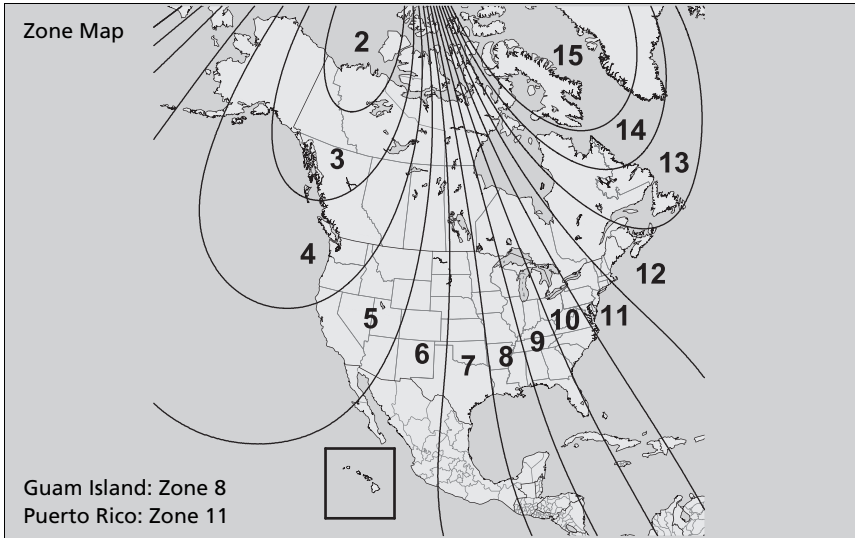
While setting the compass:
- The ⮌ (Back) button returns to the previous screen.

 * Not available on all models

Compass Zone Selection



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON (II).
2. Press and hold the (day/night) button until the display shows the compass setting menu.
3. Rotate to select **Zone**, then press. The display shows the current zone number.
4. Rotate to select the zone number of your area (See Zone Map), then press.



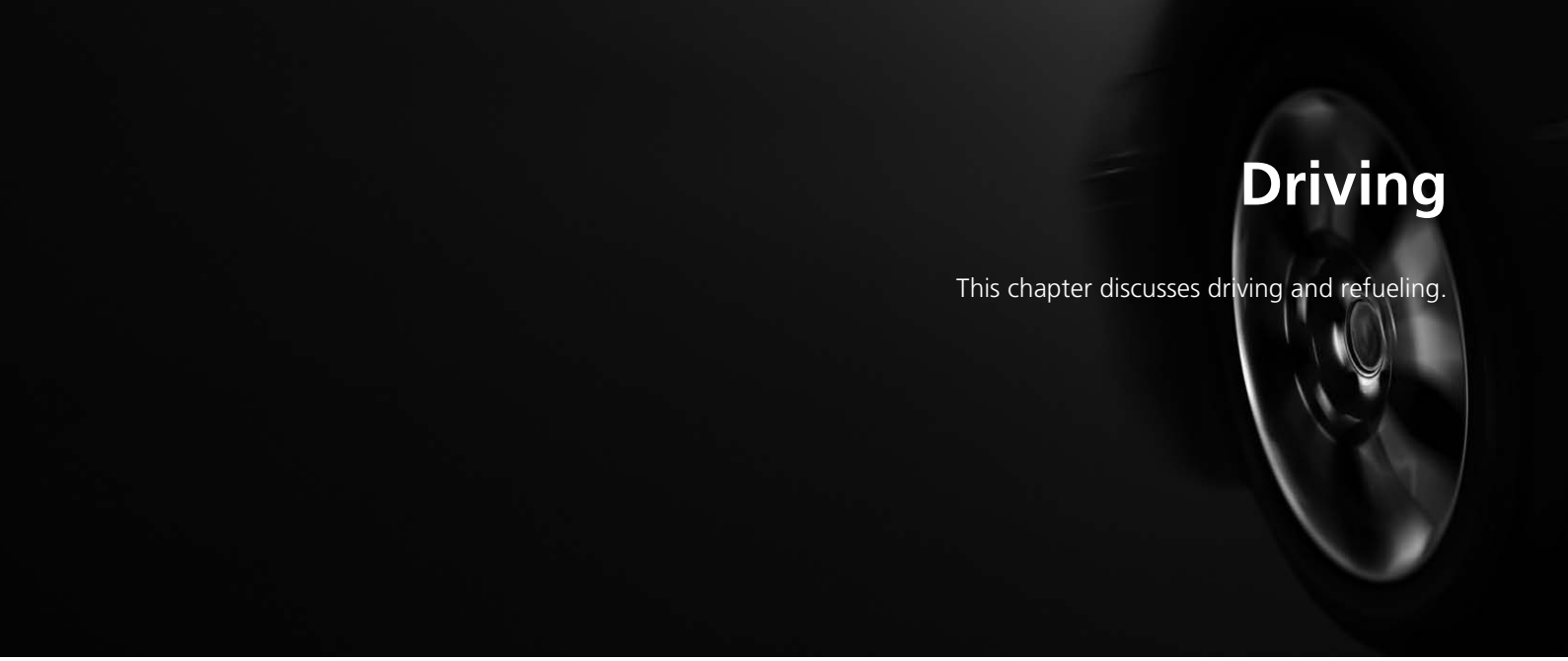
Compass Zone Selection

The zone selection is done to compensate the variation between magnetic north and true north.

If the calibration starts while the audio system is in use, the display returns to normal after the calibration is completed.

Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.



Before Driving 446
Towing a Trailer
Towing Preparation 451
Driving Safely with a Trailer 454
Towing Your Vehicle 455
Off-Highway Driving Guidelines
General Information 456
Important Safety Precautions 456
Avoiding Trouble 457
When Driving
Models without smart entry system
Starting the Engine 458
Models with smart entry system
Starting the Engine 460
Precautions While Driving 465
Continuously Variable Transmission ... 466
Shifting 467
ECON Button 469
Cruise Control* 470
Front Sensor Camera* 477
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* 479
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System* 495
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* .. 499
Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System 507
LaneWatch™* 513
Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™* 515
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ... 516
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation 520
Braking
Brake System 522
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 528
Brake Assist System 529
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)* 530
Parking Your Vehicle
When Stopped 540
Multi-View Rear Camera 546
Refueling 548
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 551
Turbo Engine Vehicle* 552

* Not available on all models

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the hood is securely closed.
  ▶ If the hood opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tires are in good condition.
  ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 595
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.
Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the hood, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the hood for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  ▶ Carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe.
  ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 449
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close and lock all doors and the tailgate.
  ➡ **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 142
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 195
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 201
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
  ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 192
  ➡ **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 193

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

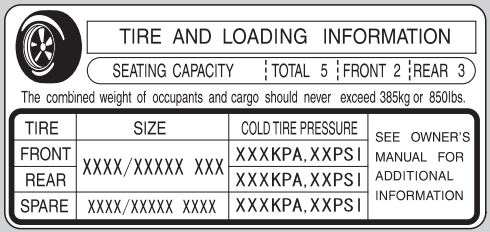
Continued

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats, or the operation of the sensors under the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 44
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  ➡ **Indicators** P. 80

Maximum Load Limit

The maximum load for your vehicle is 850 lbs (385 kg). See the Tire and Loading Information label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

Label Example


TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY | TOTAL 5 | FRONT 2 | REAR 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 385kg or 850lbs.

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	XXXX/XXXXX XXX	XXXKPA, XXPSI	
REAR		XXXKPA, XXPSI	
SPARE	XXXX/XXXXX XXXX	XXXKPA, XXPSI	

This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit -

(1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.
(1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

Continued

Maximum Load Limit

⚠WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):
The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories, all cargo, and the tongue load.

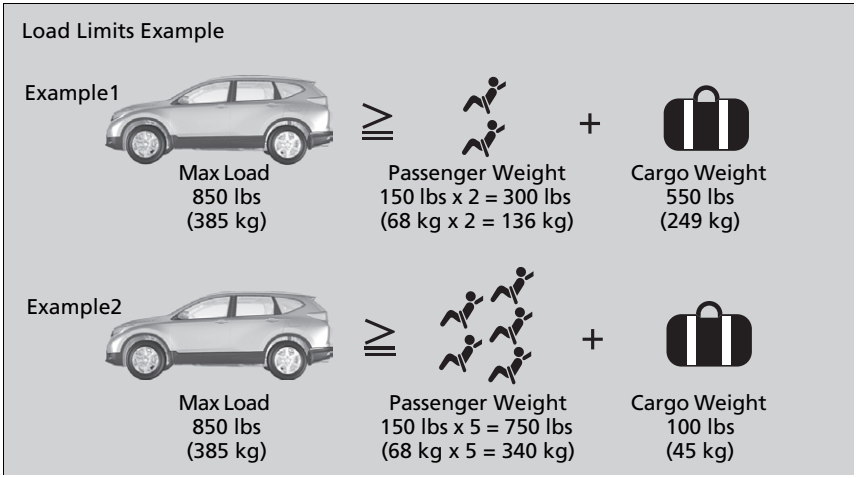
➡ **Specifications** P. 648

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):
The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle axle.

➡ **Specifications** P. 648

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.



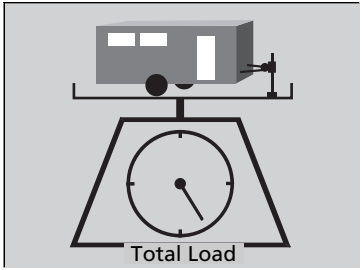
Maximum Load Limit

Towing a Trailer:
See Towing a Trailer to determine whether your vehicle is designed to tow a tailer.
Towing a Trailer P. 451

Towing Preparation

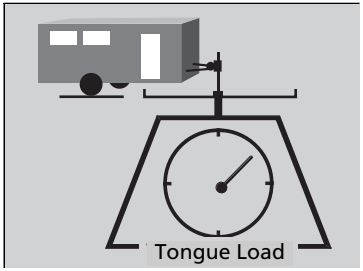
Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



Total trailer weight

Maximum allowable weight of the trailer, cargo, and everything in or on it must not exceed 1,500 lbs (680 kg). Towing loads in excess of this can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.



Tongue load

The weight of the tongue with a fully loaded trailer on the hitch should be approximately 10% of the total trailer weight.

- Excessive tongue load reduces front tire traction and steering control. Too little tongue load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper tongue load, start by loading 60% of the load toward the front of the trailer and 40% toward the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

Towing Load Limits

⚠WARNING

Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your cargo load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and the tongue load.

Break-in Period
Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 600 miles (1,000 km).

Never exceed the gross weight ratings.
Gross weight information
➡ **Specifications** P. 648

Continued

■ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

■ Hitches

The hitch must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

■ Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

■ Trailer brakes

Recommended for any trailer with a total weight of 1,000 lbs (450 kg) or more:
There are two common types of trailer brakes: surge and electric. Surge brakes are common for boat trailers, since the brakes will get wet. If you choose electric brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system, as it will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

■ Additional towing equipment

Many states and provinces/territories require special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets federal, state, province/territory, and local regulations.

Consult your trailer maker for proper installation and setup of the equipment.
Improper installation and setup can affect the handling, stability, and braking performance of your vehicle.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

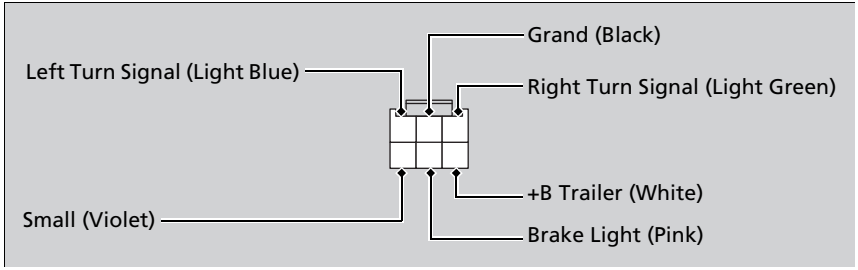
Trailer packages and products:
- Ball mount, hitch plug, hitch pin etc.
- Wiring harness kit
- Trailer hitch kit

➡ **Trailer brakes** P. 452

Are available at a dealer.

■ Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with federal, state, province/territory, and local regulations. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.



We recommend that you have a dealer install a Honda wiring harness and converter. They are designed for your vehicle.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

Trailer light

The trailer lighting connector is located behind the left side panel in the cargo area.
Even if you are planning to use the non-Honda trailer lighting harness and converter, ask a dealer for the correct connector and pins.

Driving Safely with a Trailer

■ Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
  ➡ **Towing Load Limits** P. 451
- Securely attach the hitch, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressures of the trailer tires, including the spare.

■ Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.
- Use the D position when towing a trailer on level roads.

■ Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

■ Driving in Hilly Terrain

- Monitor your temperature gauge. If it nears the white (H) mark, turn off the climate control system and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.

Driving Safely with a Trailer

Operating speed when towing a trailer is restricted up to 65 mph (100 km/h).

Parking
In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tires.

Towing Your Vehicle

Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, refer to the emergency towing information.

Emergency Towing P. 644

General Information

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on pavement, however, its higher ground clearance allows you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads. It is not designed for trail-blazing, or other challenging off-highway activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills and that your vehicle will handle somewhat differently than it does on pavement. Pay attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before leaving the pavement.

Important Safety Precautions

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations:

- Be sure to store cargo properly and do not exceed your cargo load limits.
  ➢ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 449
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It's up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.

⚠WARNING

Improperly operating this vehicle on or the off pavement can cause a crash or rollover in which you and your passengers could be seriously injured or killed.

- Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner's manual.
- Keep your speed low, and don't drive faster than conditions permit.

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

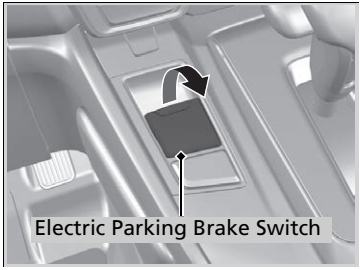
➢ **Important Handling Information** P. 36
➢ **Precautions While Driving** P. 465

Avoiding Trouble

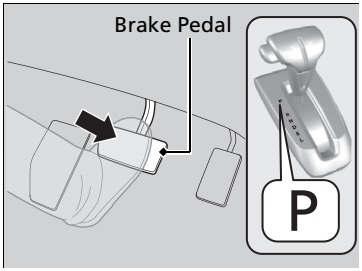
- **Check Out Your Vehicle** before you leave the pavement and make sure that all scheduled maintenance has been completed. Pay special attention to the condition of the tires, and check the tire pressures.
- **Remember** the route you choose presents limits (too steep or bumpy), you have limits (driving skill and comfort), and your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power). Failing to recognize these limits will likely put you and your passengers in a hazardous situation.
- **Accelerating and Braking** should be done slowly and gradually. Trying to start or stop too fast can cause a loss of traction and you could lose control.
- **Avoiding Obstacles and Debris** in the road reduces the likelihood of a rollover or damage to your suspension or other components.
- **Driving on Slopes** increases your risk of a rollover, particularly if you attempt to drive across a slope that is too steep. Going straight or down a slope is usually the safest. If you can't clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk it before you drive it. If there is any doubt whether you can safely pass, don't try it. Find another route. If you get stuck when climbing, do not try to turn around. Back down slowly following the same route you took up the hill.
- **Crossing a Stream** - Avoid driving through deep water. If you encounter water in your route (a small stream or large puddle, for example), evaluate it carefully before going ahead. Make sure it is shallow, flowing slowly, and has firm ground underneath. If you are not sure of the depth or the ground, turn around and find another route. Driving through deep water can also damage your vehicle. The water can get into the transmission and differential, diluting the lubricant and causing an eventual failure. It can also wash the grease out of the wheel bearings.
- **If You Get Stuck**, carefully go in the direction that you think will get you unstuck. Do not spin the tires as this will only make things worse and could damage the transmission. If you are unable to free yourself, your vehicle will need to be towed. Front and rear tow hooks are provided for this purpose.

Models without smart entry system

Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.
▶ The parking brake must be applied to start the engine.



2. Check that the shift lever is in [P], then depress the brake pedal.
▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in [N] with the parking brake applied, it is safer to start it in [P].



3. Turn the ignition switch to START [III] without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce battery drain.

If you live in a region where winter is extremely cold, an engine block heater will improve starting and warming of the engine. Consult a dealer for details.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

Do not hold the key in START [III] for more than 10 seconds.
- If the engine does not start right away, wait for at least 30 seconds before trying again.
- If the engine starts, but then immediately stops, wait at least 30 seconds before repeating step 3 while gently depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal once the engine starts.

■ Starting to Drive

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the shift lever in D. Select R when reversing.
2. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.
➡ **Parking Brake** P. 522

■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Move the shift lever to D, S, or L when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Starting the Engine

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.
➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 159

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

Hill start assist system

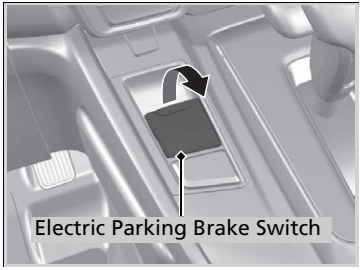
Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

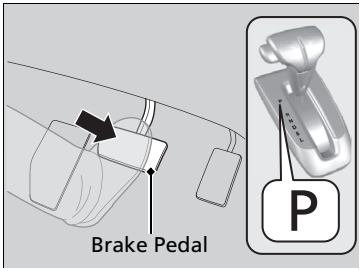
Hill start assist will operate even when VSA® is switched off.

Models with smart entry system

Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.
▶ The parking brake must be applied to start the engine.



2. Check that the shift lever is in [P], then depress the brake pedal.
▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in [N] with the parking brake applied, it is safer to start it in [P].

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

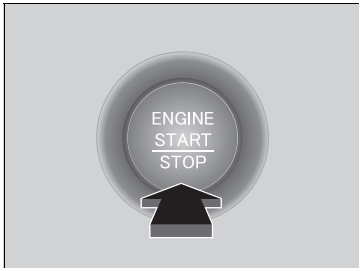
The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce battery drain.

If you live in a region where winter is extremely cold, an engine block heater will improve starting and warming of the engine. Consult a dealer for details.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.
If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.
Immobilizer System P. 159



3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Shift to P.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Starting the Engine

Bring the smart entry remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the smart entry remote is weak.

If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak P. 625

The engine may not start if the smart entry remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

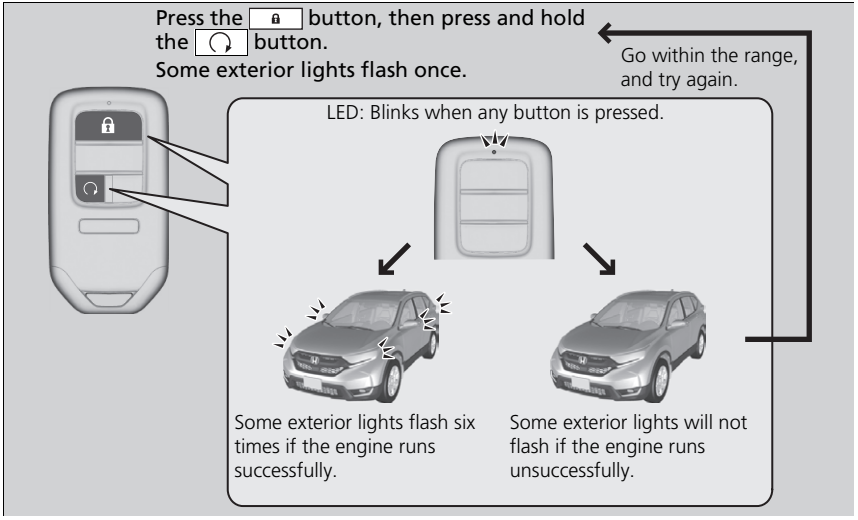
Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.
If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

Continued

■ Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback*

You can remotely start the engine using the button on the smart entry remote.

■ To start the engine



When started remotely, the engine automatically shuts off after 10 minutes of idling and/or the brake pedal and **ENGINE START/STOP** button have not been pressed simultaneously.

To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the button, then press and hold the button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback*

⚠WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

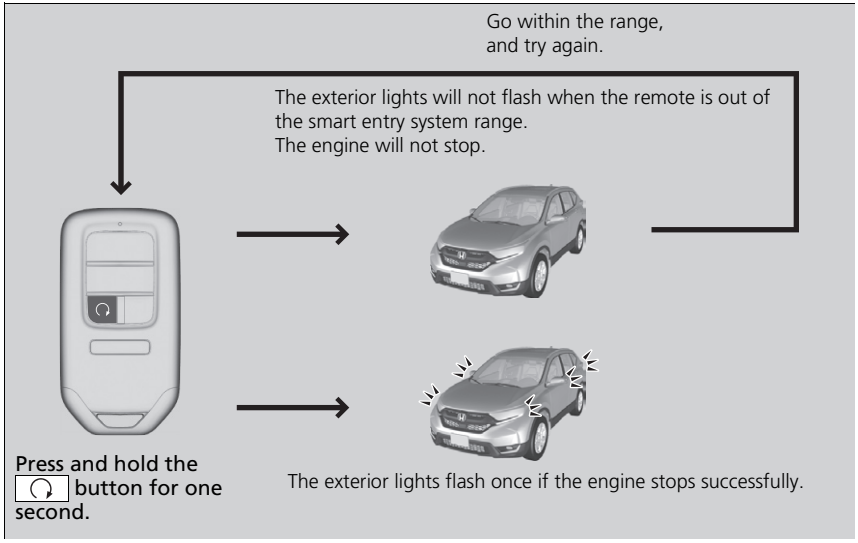
If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the remote, the range will be reduced. The range may be less when the vehicle is running. This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

The engine may not start by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting using the audio/information screen*.
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The gear is in a position other than P.
- The hood is open, or any door or the tailgate is unlocked.

* Not available on all models

■ To stop the engine



Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback*

- You have already used the remote twice to start the engine.
- Another registered smart entry remote is in the vehicle.
- There is an antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The security system alarm is not set.

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.
When it is warm outside:
- The air conditioning is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:
- The defroster is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear defogger and door mirror heaters* are activated.
- The seat and heated steering wheel are activated*

Heated Steering Wheel*1 P. 220
Front Seat Heaters* P. 221

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the button* on the smart entry remote

1. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button simultaneously.

When the engine was started in any case

2. Put the shift lever in D. Select R when reversing.

3. With the parking brake is applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.

▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

4. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator. Move the shift lever to D, S, or L when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the button* on the smart entry remote

The engine stops when the shift lever is moved out of P before the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is pressed. Follow step 1 when starting to drive.

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA® is switched off.

* Not available on all models

Precautions While Driving

Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers whenever possible.
- Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the center of gravity.
- Roof load capacity is 165 lbs (75 kg), available roof racks/carriers may have lower capacities. Please check accessory's information (Honda accessory).

In Rain

Avoid driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Precautions While Driving

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.
Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

Continuously Variable Transmission

■ Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases.
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Precautions While Driving

If the ignition switch is turned to ACCESSORY [I]*1 while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in [N], as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 600 miles (1,000 km) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as to not damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km). You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

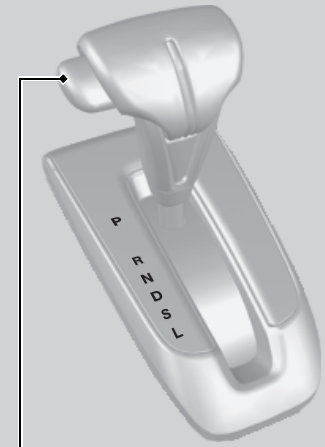
Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

Important Handling Information P. 36
Precautions While Driving P. 465

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ **Shift lever positions**



Release Button

P **Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked

D **Drive**
Used for normal driving

S **Drive (S)**
Used:
- For better acceleration
- To increase engine braking
- When going up or down hills

L **Low**
- Used to further increase engine braking
- Used when going up or down hills

Shifting

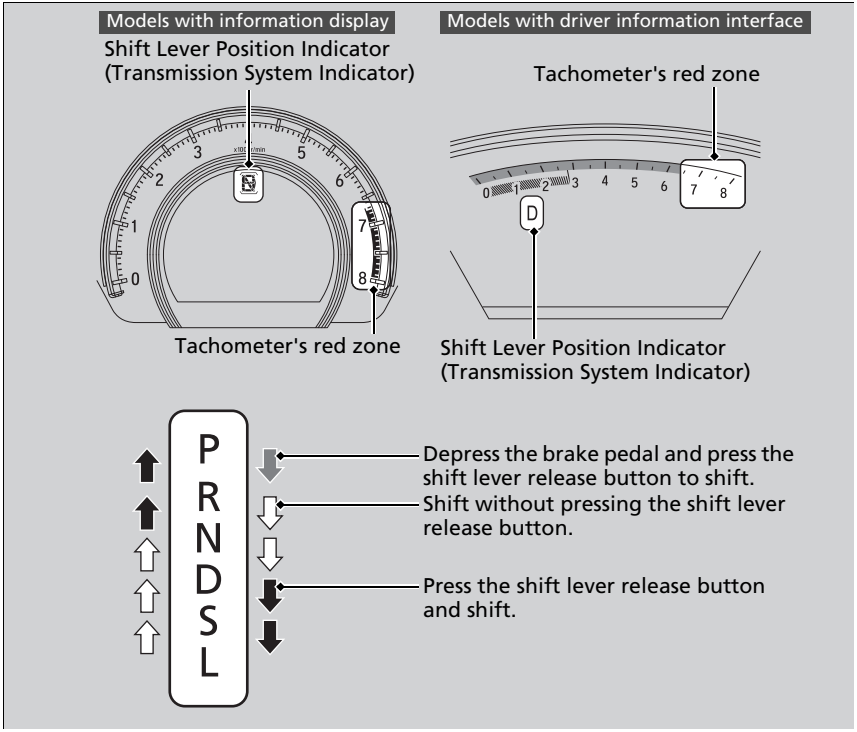
You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1 and remove the key unless the shift lever is in P.

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in N while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

■ Shift Lever Operation



Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

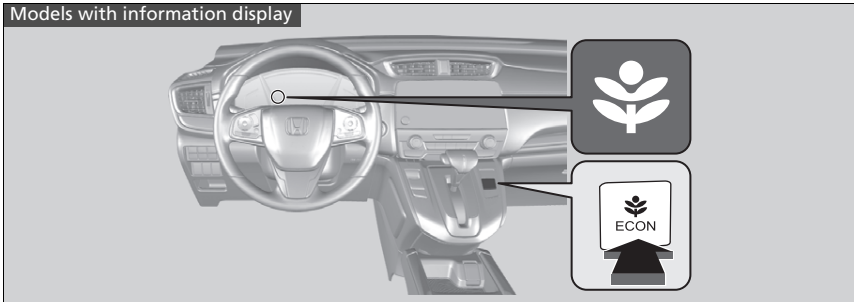
If the indicator of the currently selected gear position, or the transmission system indicators are blinking simultaneously, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

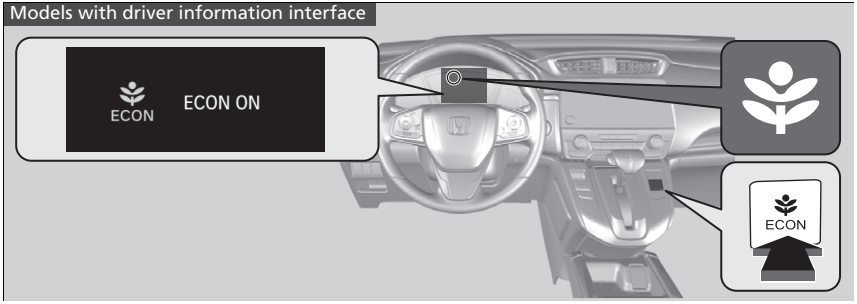
It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

ECON Button

Models with information display



Models with driver information interface



The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.
The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, transmission, climate control system, and cruise control.

ECON Button

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.

Cruise Control*

Models with information display

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on freeways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

When to use

■Vehicle speed for cruise control:
Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~

■Shift positions for cruise control:
In D or S

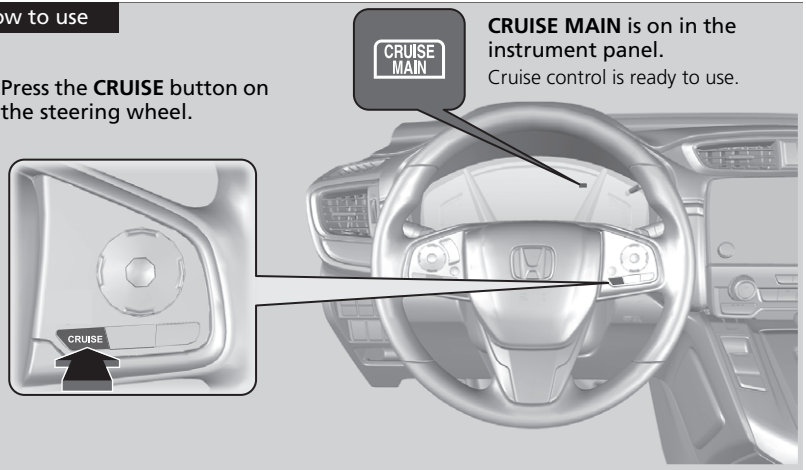
Always keep sufficient distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.



How to use

■Press the **CRUISE** button on the steering wheel.

CRUISE MAIN is on in the instrument panel.
Cruise control is ready to use.



Cruise Control*

⚠WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

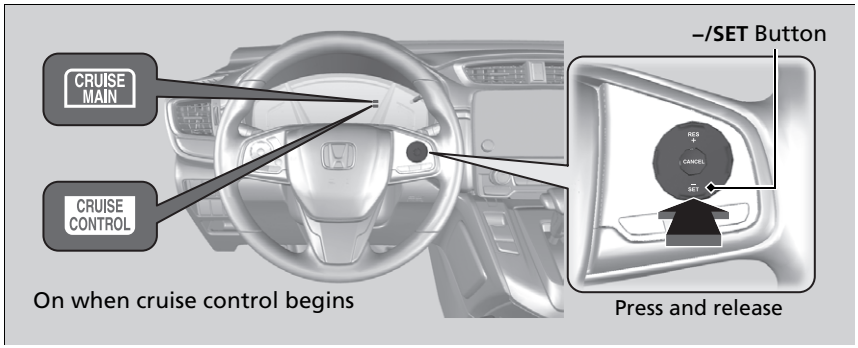
It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control:
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE** button.

While in the ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

* Not available on all models

To Set the Vehicle Speed



Take your foot off the pedal and press the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

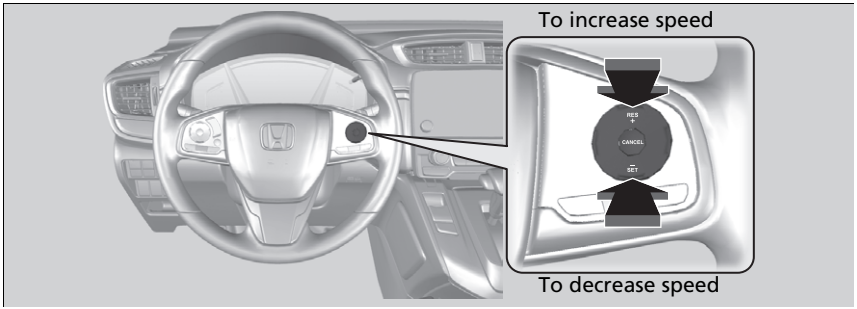
The moment you release the **–/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

When you use cruise control, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

Continued

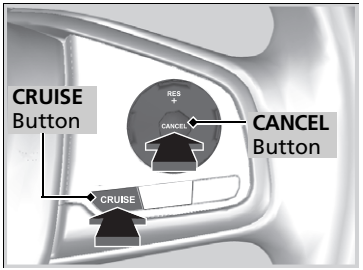
To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **–/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **–/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:
After cruise control has been canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:
- When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 22 mph (35 km/h) or less, cruise control is canceled automatically.

Cruise Control*

Models with driver information interface

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on freeways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

When to use

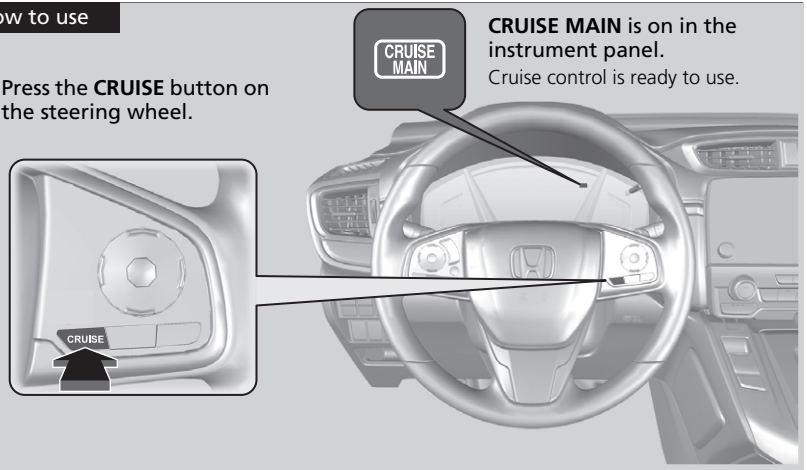
■Vehicle speed for cruise control:
Desired speed in a range from about 25 mph (40 km/h) to 125 mph (200 km/h)

■Shift positions for cruise control:
In D or S



How to use

■Press the **CRUISE** button on the steering wheel.



CRUISE MAIN is on in the instrument panel.
Cruise control is ready to use.

Cruise Control*

⚠WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

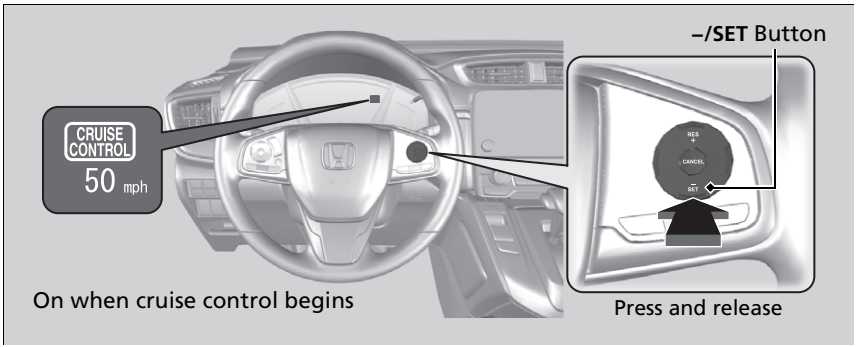
When not using cruise control:
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE** button.

While in the ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



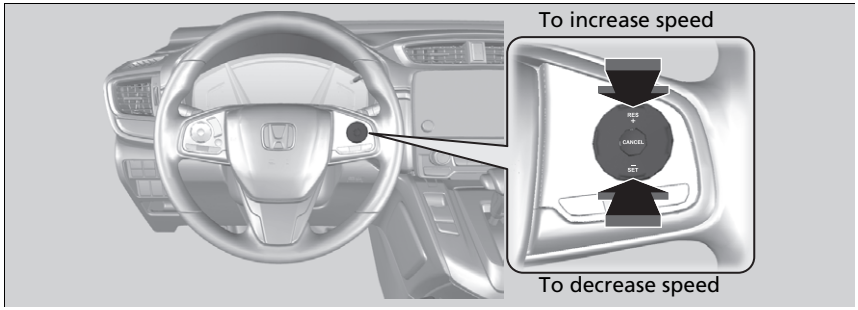
Take your foot off the pedal and press the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **–/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The set speed is displayed. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator and set speed comes on.

When you use cruise control, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **–/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



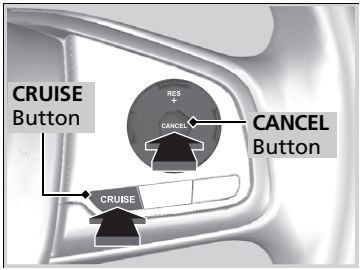
- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph or 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed, the speed limit increases or decreases in increments of 5 mph or 5 km/h every 0.5 second until system limit is reached.
- The vehicle may accelerate or decelerate until the set speed is reached.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **–/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

Continued

To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:
After cruise control has been canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

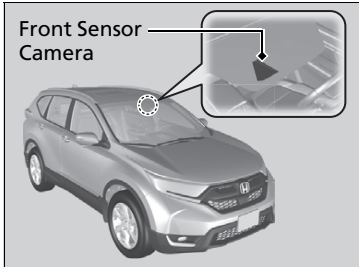
You cannot set or resume in the following situations:
- When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 22 mph (35 km/h) or less, cruise control is canceled automatically.

Front Sensor Camera*

The camera, used in systems; such as RDM, LKAS, ACC with LSF and CMBS™, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate their functions.

Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Sensor Camera*

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the hood, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.
After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Front Sensor Camera*

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate:Camera Temperature Too High**: message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the air flow directed toward the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate:Clean Front Windshield**: message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windshield. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windshield and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

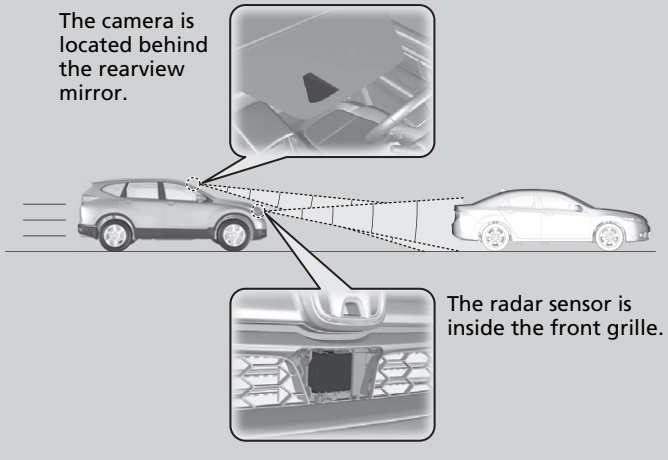
 * Not available on all models

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with LSF slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

When to use



■Vehicle speed for ACC with LSF: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with LSF range** – ACC with LSF operates at speeds up to 90 mph (145 km/h).
No vehicle is detected within ACC with LSF range – ACC with LSF operates at the speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) or above.

■Shift position for ACC with LSF: In D or S.

▶Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

⚠WARNING

Improper use of ACC with LSF can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with LSF only when driving on expressways or freeways and in good weather conditions.

⚠WARNING

ACC with LSF has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

Important Reminder

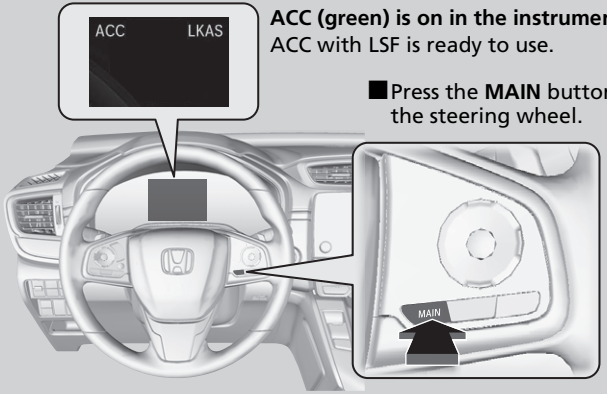
As with any system, there are limits to ACC with LSF. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ How to activate the system

How to use



ACC (green) is on in the instrument panel.
ACC with LSF is ready to use.

■Press the **MAIN** button on the steering wheel.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, both ACC with LSF and the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are either turned on or off.

ACC with LSF may not work properly under certain conditions.

ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations
P. 486

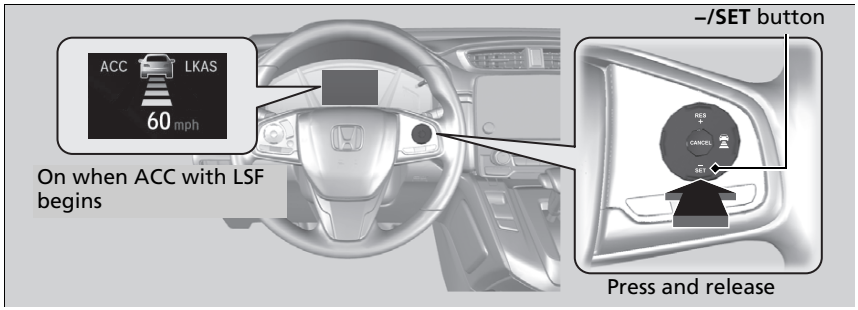
When not using ACC with LSF: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

Do not use ACC with LSF under the following conditions:

- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC with LSF will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

 * Not available on all models

To Set the Vehicle Speed



When driving at 25 mph (40 km/h) or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with LSF begins.

When driving slower than 25 mph (40 km/h): If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the button fixes the set speed to 25 mph (40 km/h) regardless of current vehicle speed. If your vehicle is stationary and a vehicle is detected ahead, your vehicle speed can be set, even with the brake pedal depressed.

To Set the Vehicle Speed

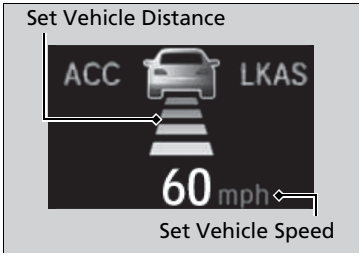
You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface* or audio/information screen* between mph and km/h.

Customized Features P. 116, 349

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF), Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) system, Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) OFF, low tire pressure/TPMS, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™), and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued



When ACC with LSF starts operating, the vehicle icon, distance bars and set speed appear on the driver information interface.

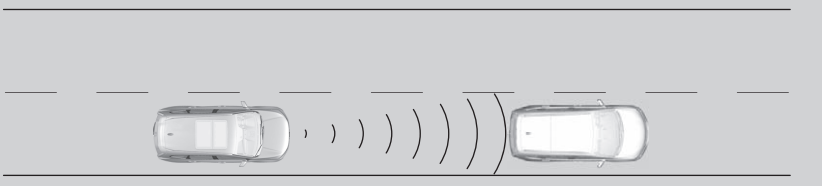
When you use ACC with LSF, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

When in Operation

There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with LSF monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with LSF range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with LSF system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

To Set or Change Following-Interval P. 489



ACC with LSF Range: 394 ft. (120 m)

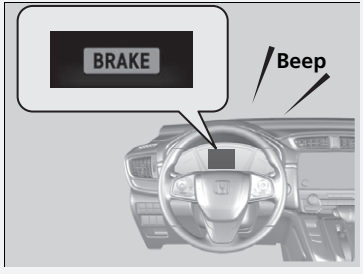


A vehicle icon appears on the driver information interface

When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed is detected in front of you, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface.
Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate distance from the vehicle ahead.



Even if the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is short, ACC with LSF may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the distance between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with LSF detecting range. Change the **ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep** setting.

Customized Features P. 349

Continued

■ There is no vehicle ahead



A vehicle icon with dotted-line contour appears on the driver information interface

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from traveling at the set speed, ACC with LSF accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with LSF range.
ACC with LSF stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with LSF range.

When in Operation

Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe distance when using ACC with LSF. Additionally, ACC with LSF may not work properly under certain conditions.

➡ **ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations**
P. 486

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with LSF range and slows to a stop





Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The **Stopped** message appears on the driver information interface.

When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, the vehicle icon on the driver information interface blinks. If you press the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with LSF operates again within the prior set speed.

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with LSF will operate again within the prior set speed.

A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with LSF range and slows to a stop

⚠WARNING

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with LSF system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with LSF.

Continued

■ ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 477

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

■ Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (Wrong size, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the front grille is dirty.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tire chains are installed.

ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations

The radar sensor for ACC with LSF is shared with the collision mitigation braking system™ (CMBS™).

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)* P. 530

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 477

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

 * Not available on all models

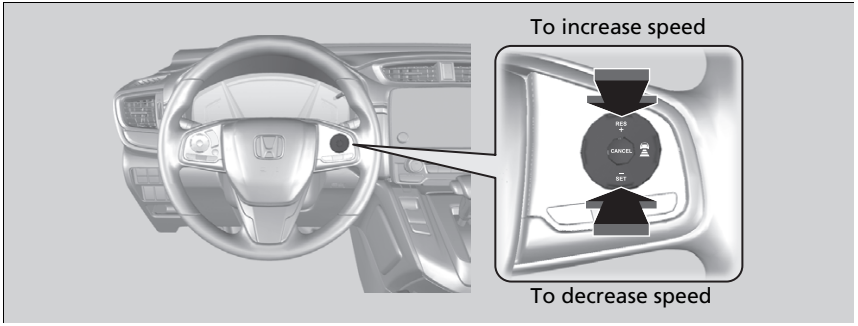
■ **Detection limitations**

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle or a pedestrian in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

Continued

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button on the steering wheel.



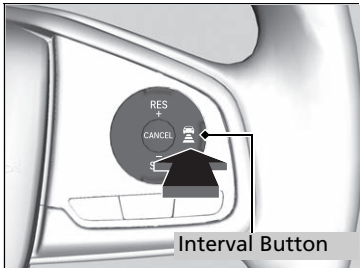
- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph or 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep pressing the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 5 mph or 5 km/h accordingly.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with LSF may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **–/SET** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

To Set or Change Following-Interval

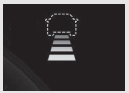


Press the (Interval) button to change the ACC with LSF following-interval.
Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-interval.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

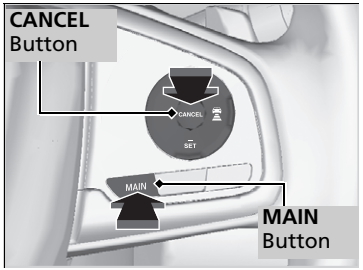
Continued

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-Interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		50 mph (80 km/h)	65 mph (104 km/h)
Short		83 feet 25 meters 1.1 sec	100 feet 31 meters 1.1 sec
Middle		110 feet 33 meters 1.5 sec	137 feet 42 meters 1.5 sec
Long		154 feet 47 meters 2.1 sec	200 feet 61 meters 2.1 sec
Extra Long		204 feet 62 meters 2.8 sec	272 feet 83 meters 2.9 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the distance between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with LSF distance setting.

To Cancel



To cancel ACC with LSF, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
  ▶ ACC with LSF indicator goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  ▶ When the LSF function has stopped the vehicle, you cannot cancel ACC with LSF by depressing the brake pedal.

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have canceled ACC with LSF, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with LSF has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

Continued

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with LSF is automatically canceled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with LSF to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected, or the tires are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA® or CMBS™ is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA® system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with LSF range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.
- When the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.

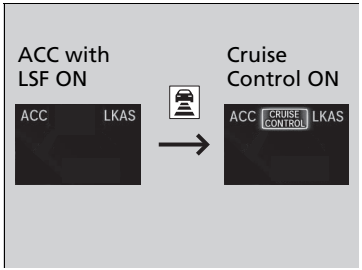
The ACC with LSF automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The engine is turned off.

Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC with LSF to cancel improves, then press the **–/SET** button.

To Switch ACC with LSF to Cruise Control



Press and hold the (interval) button for one second. **Cruise Mode Selected** appears on the driver information interface for two seconds, and then the mode switches to Cruise.
To switch back to ACC with LSF, press and hold the button again for one second.

When to use

Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~.

To Set the Vehicle Speed

Take your foot off the pedal and press the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.
The moment you release the **–/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

When you use cruise control, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

To Switch ACC with LSF to Cruise Control

Always be aware which mode you are in. When you are driving in Cruise mode, the system will not assist you to maintain a following-interval from a vehicle ahead of you.

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface* or audio/information screen* between mph and km/h.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 116, 349

* Not available on all models

Continued

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph or 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep pressing the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 5 mph or 5 km/h accordingly.

To Cancel

To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:
After cruise control has been canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

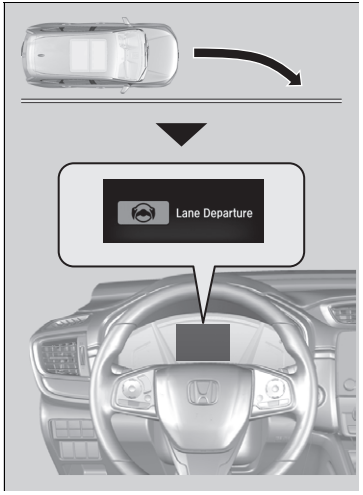
- When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
- When the **MAIN** button is turned off.

At vehicle speeds of 22 mph (35 km/h) or less, cruise control canceled automatically.

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

How the System Works



The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

As a visual alert, the **Lane Departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

▶ Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the RDM system has limitations.

Over-reliance on the RDM system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The RDM system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The RDM system may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 477

The RDM system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

RDM Conditions and Limitations P. 497

There are times when you may not notice RDM functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

* Not available on all models

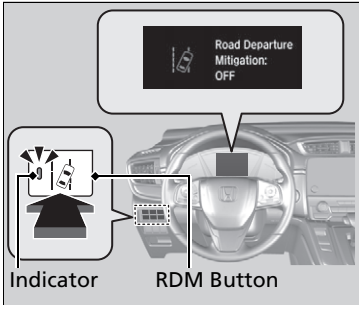
Continued

How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is traveling between about 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

RDM On and Off



Press the RDM button to turn the system on and off.

▶ The indicator in the button comes on and the message appears on the driver information interface when the system is on.

How the System Activates

The RDM system may automatically shut off and the indicator comes and stays on.

➔ **Indicators** P. 80

RDM system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

RDM On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the audio/information screen, the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 349

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF), Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) system, Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) OFF, low tire pressure/TPMS, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™), and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

RDM Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the front windshield.

Continued

■ **Roadway conditions**
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- When driving on roads with double lines.

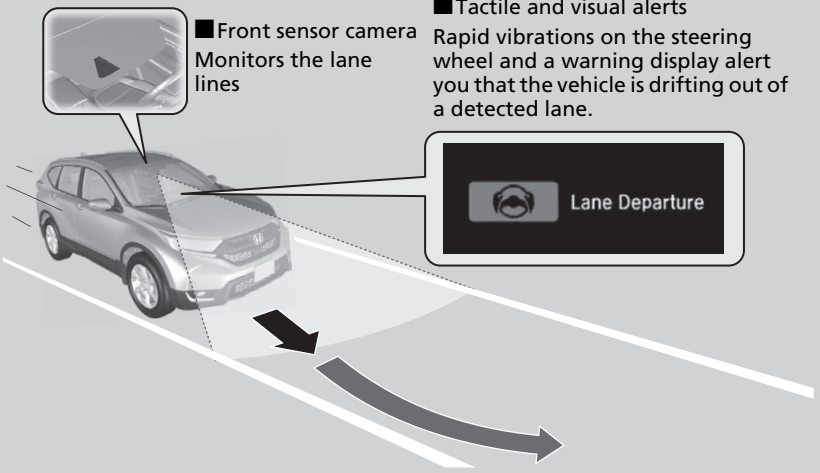
■ **Vehicle conditions**
- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tire chains are installed.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



■Front sensor camera

Monitors the lane lines

■Tactile and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

➡ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages*** P. 102

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the front windshield and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on freeways.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

➡ **The LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 505

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

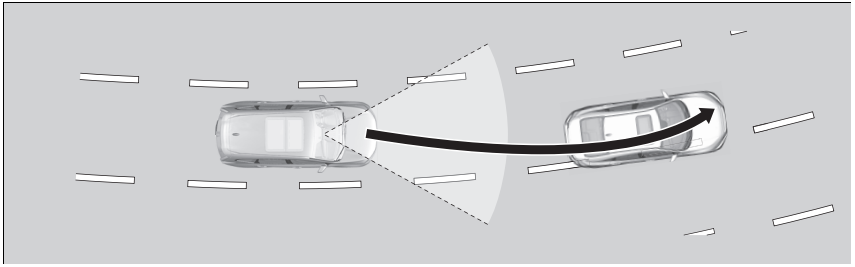
➡ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 477

* Not available on all models

Continued

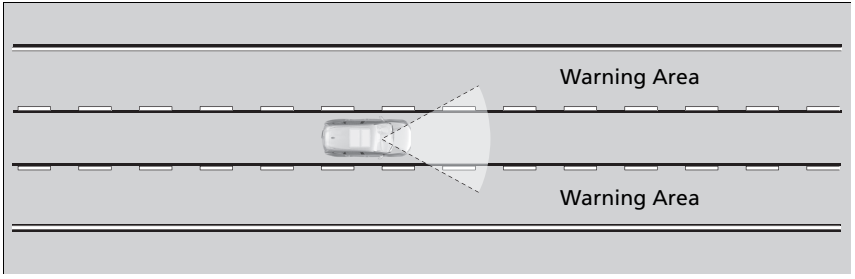
Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane, when the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration as well as a warning display.



Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be canceled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

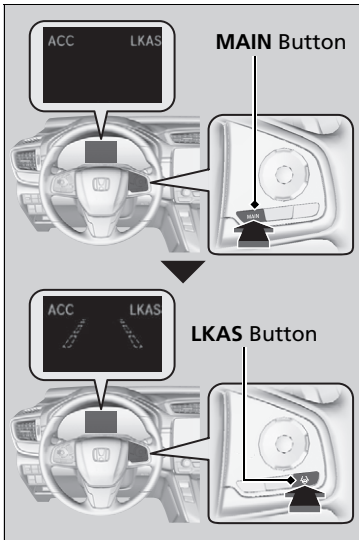
* Not available on all models

When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the center of the lane.
- The vehicle speed is between about 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.

How to activate the system



1. Press the **MAIN** button.
▶ The LKAS is on in the driver information interface.
The system is ready to use.

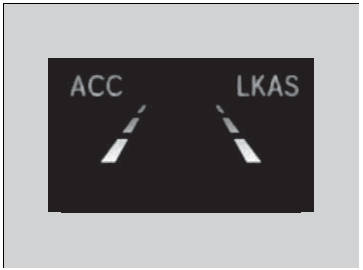
2. Press the LKAS button.
▶ Lane outlines appear on the driver information interface.
The system is activated.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

If the vehicle drifts toward either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

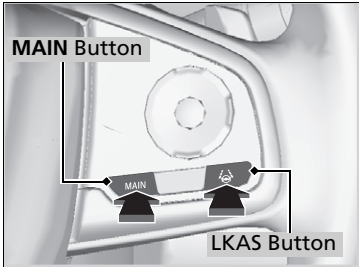
* Not available on all models

Continued



3. Keep your vehicle near the center of the lane while driving.
▶ The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

■ To cancel



To cancel the LKAS:
Press the **MAIN** or LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

When the System can be Used

The LKAS temporarily deactivates when it fails to detect lane lines. When the system detects the lines again, it comes back on automatically.

To cancel

Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC with LSF on and off.



When the LKAS is suspended, the lane lines on the driver information interface change to contour lines, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

■ **The system operation is suspended if you:**

- Set the wipers to continuous operation.
  ▶ Turning the wipers off resumes the LKAS.
- Decrease the vehicle speed to 40 mph (64 km/h) or less.
  ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to 45 mph (72 km/h) or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

- Set the wiper switch to **AUTO** and the wipers operate continuously.
  ▶ The LKAS resumes when the wipers stop or operate intermittently.

Continued

■ **The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:**
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is quickly turned.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- The vehicle runs on a curved road over the speed limit.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be canceled when:**
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.
- When driving through a sharp curve.
- When driving at a speed in excess of approximately 90 mph (145 km/h).
- When the ABS or VSA® systems engage.

A beeper will sound if the LKAS is automatically canceled.

The LKAS Conditions and Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markings.
- Reflections on the interior of the front windshield.

Continued

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- When driving on roads with double lines.

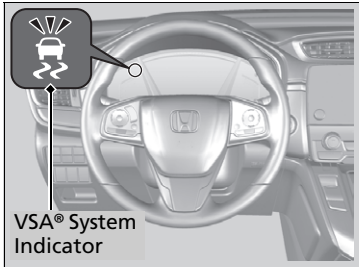
■ **Vehicle conditions**

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

VSA® helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

VSA® Operation



When VSA® activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

The VSA® may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA® system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

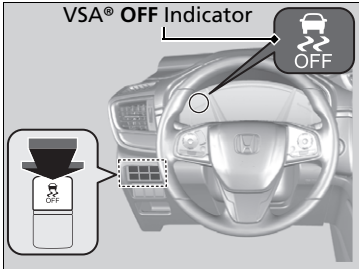
VSA® cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA® system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA® temporarily switched off.

Continued

■ VSA® On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA® functionality/ features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA® functionality/features, press the [OFF] (VSA® OFF) button until you hear a beep.

VSA® is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

When the [OFF] button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA® off if you are not able to free it when the VSA® is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA® on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA® system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM)*, Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) system, Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) OFF, low tire pressure/TPMS, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*, and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes each of the front and rear wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA® system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Blind spot information System*

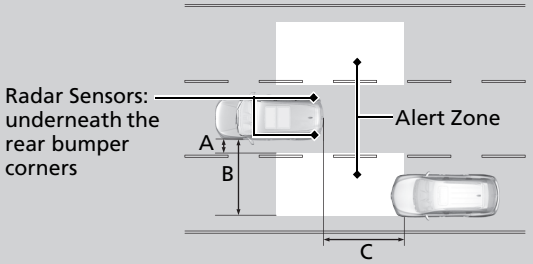
Is designed to detect vehicles in specified alert zones adjacent to your vehicle, particularly in harder to see areas commonly known as "blind spots."

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on for a few seconds, providing assistance when you change lanes.

■ How the system works

- The transmission is in D.
- Your vehicle speed is between 20 mph (32 km/h) and 100 mph (160 km/h)

Alert zone range
A: Approx. 1.6 ft. (0.5 m)
B: Approx. 10 ft. (3 m)
C: Approx. 10 ft. (3 m)



Blind spot information System*

⚠WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.
Do not rely only on the blind spot information system when changing lanes.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, blind spot information system has limitations. Over reliance on blind spot information system may result in a collision.

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur.

- The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on due to obstruction (splashes, etc.) even without the **Blind Spot Info Not Available** driver information interface appearing.
- The blind spot information system alert indicator may come on even with the message appearing.

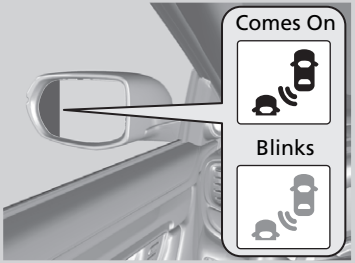
 * Not available on all models

■ When the system detects a vehicle

Blind spot information System Alert Indicator:
Located on the outside rearview mirror on both sides.

■Comes on when
- A vehicle enters the alert zone from behind to overtake you with a speed difference of no more than 31 mph (50 km/h) from your vehicle.
- You pass a vehicle with a speed difference of no more than 12 mph (20 km/h).

■Blinks and the beeper sounds when
You move the turn signal lever in the direction of the detected vehicle. The beeper sounds three times.



Blind spot information System*

The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:
- A vehicle does not stay in the alert zone for more than two seconds.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle you are passing is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.

You can change the setting for blind spot information system.
Customized Features P. 349

Turn the system off when towing a trailer.
The system may not work properly for the following reasons:
- The added mass tilts the vehicle and changes the radar coverage.
- The trailer itself can be detected by the radar sensors, causing the blind spot information system alert indicators to come on.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Blind spot information System*

Blind spot information system may be adversely affected when:

- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc,.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well, such as a motorcycle, is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up external electrical interference.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.
- The orientation of the sensors has been changed.
- In bad weather (Heavy rain, snow, and fog).
- Making a turn at an intersection.
- Driving on a bumpy road.
- Making a short turn that slightly tilts the vehicle.

For proper blind spot information system use:

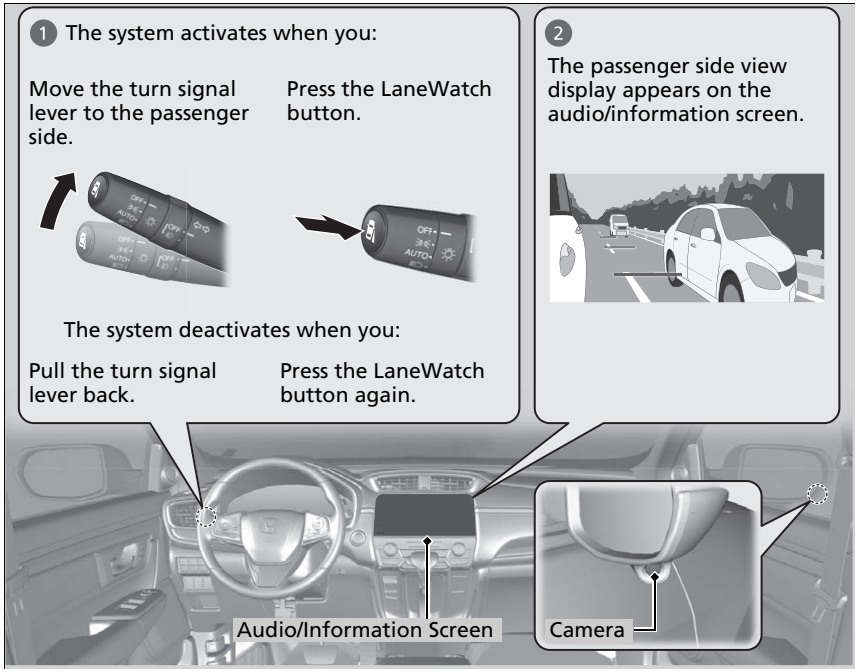
- Always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Take your vehicle to a dealer if you need the rear bumper corner area or the radar sensors to be repaired, or the rear bumper corner area is strongly impacted.

The system does not operate when in R.

 * Not available on all models

LaneWatch™*

LaneWatch is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side. A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicle, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.



LaneWatch™*

⚠WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Over reliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tires are over or under inflated.
- Your tires or wheels are of varied size or construction.

* Not available on all models

Continued

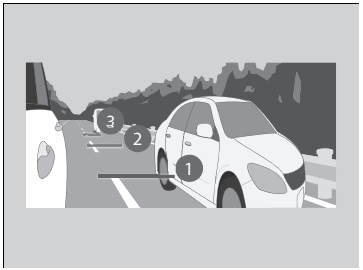
■ Customizing the LaneWatch settings

You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen.

- **Show with Turn Signal**: Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal light lever.
- **Display Time after Turn Signal Off**: Changes the remaining Lane Watch display time after you pull the turn signal lever back.
- **Reference Line**: Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch monitor.
- **Display**: Adjusts display settings.

Customized Features P. 349

■ Reference Lines



Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line 1 (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line 3 is farther away.

LaneWatch™*

The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen look slightly different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the shift lever is in R.

For proper LaneWatch operation:

- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

Reference Lines

The area around the reference line 1 (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines 1, 2 and 3 on the screen vary depending on road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

Consult a dealer if:

- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

 * Not available on all models

Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™*

When the system senses a loss of front wheel traction, it automatically transfers some power to the rear wheels. This allows you to utilize all available traction and may increase mobility.

You still need to exercise the same care when accelerating, steering, and braking that you would in a two wheel drive vehicle.

If you excessively spin all four wheels and overheat the AWD system, only the front wheels receive power. Stop until the system cools down.

Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™*

NOTICE

Do not continuously spin the front tires of your vehicle. Continuously spinning the front tires can cause transmission or rear differential damage.

The AWD system may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

Tire and Wheel Replacement P. 601

* Not available on all models

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tire, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tire while you are driving to determine if one or more tires are significantly under-inflated. This will cause the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on and a message to appear on the driver information interface*.

■ TPMS Calibration

You must start TPMS calibration every time you:
- Adjust the pressure in one or more tires.
- Rotate the tires.
- Replace one or more tires.

Before calibrating the TPMS:
- Set the cold tire pressure in all four tires.
  ➡ **Checking Tires** P. 595

Make sure:
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift lever is in P.
- The ignition switch is in ON II*1.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The system does not monitor the tires when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tire pressure and can trigger the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

Tire pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

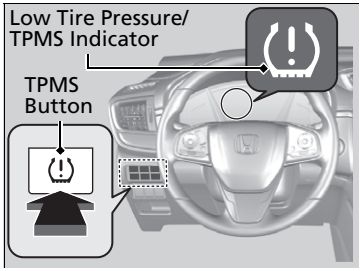
The low tire pressure indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The TPMS may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire.
➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 595

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Snow chains are used.

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:
- A compact spare tire is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tires, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at calibration.
- Snow chains are used.

* Not available on all models



Models with TPMS button

Press and hold the TPMS button until the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator blinks twice, indicating the calibration process has begun.

- If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator does not blink, confirm the above conditions then press and hold the TPMS button again.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

TPMS Calibration

- TPMS cannot be calibrated if a compact spare tire is installed.
- The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 30-65 mph (48-105 km/h).
- During calibration, if the ignition is turned off then on again, and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, the low tire pressure indicator may come on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the snow chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the TPMS.

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tires are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

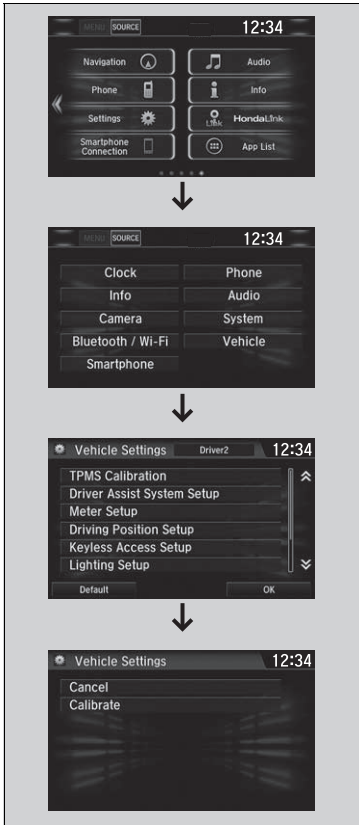
We recommend that the tires be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

Continued

TPMS Calibration

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM)*, Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) system, Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) OFF, low tire pressure/TPMS, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*, and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 * Not available on all models



Models with Display Audio

You can calibrate the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.
2. Select HOME.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Vehicle**.
5. Select **TPMS Calibration**.
6. Select **Cancel** or **Calibrate**.
   ▶ When the calibration is complete, the display returns to the customization menu screen.

- If the **Unable to initialize TPMS.** message appears, repeat steps 4-5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

U.S. models

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale



when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

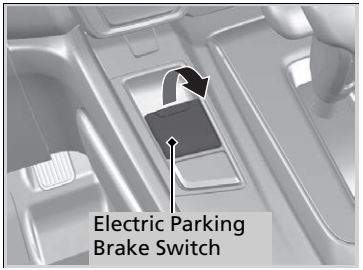
TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Brake System

■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.

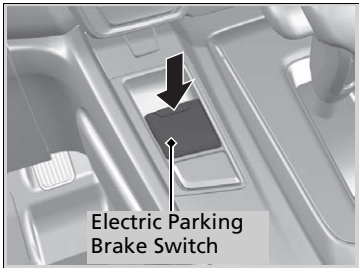


■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the ignition switch*1 is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on.



■ To release

The vehicle must be ON II*1 in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.

2. Press the electric parking brake switch.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Braking

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the battery goes dead.

➡ **Jump Starting** P. 627

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the VSA® system until the vehicle come to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and the brake hold system is applied.
- When the engine is turned off while the brake hold system is applied.
- When there is a problem with the brake hold system while brake hold is applied.

■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

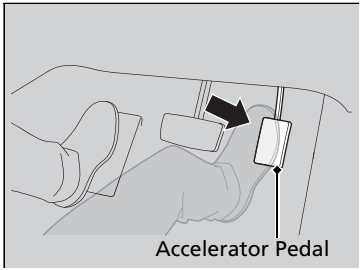
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is on.

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature P. 524

■ To release automatically

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

The parking brake automatically releases as you depress the accelerator pedal when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in P or N.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Parking Brake

Models with ACC with LSF

- When the vehicle is stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with LSF is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with LSF.
- When the engine is turned off while ACC with LSF is activated.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is traveling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Brake system indicator
- VSA® system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

Continued

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the ignition switch is in ON II*1, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Shift the select lever to P.
2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up and release the parking brake switch.
   ▶ Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator has come on.
3. Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within 3 seconds pull up and hold the switch again.
4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
   ▶ Two beeps indicates that the feature has been activated.
   ▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
   ▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the engine.
   ▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature for when putting your vehicle through a conveyor type car wash or when having your vehicle towed. You can follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
2. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1 and then within 2 seconds push down the parking brake switch.
   ▶ Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
   ▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both ACC with LSF and the automatic brake hold system.
   ▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is on.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Parking brake system

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

Brake Assist System P. 529
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 528

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, this is caused by the brake wear indicator rubbing on the brake rotor and indicates that the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. If you hear only an occasional squeak or squeal when you initially apply the brake pedal, this may be normal and caused by high frequency vibration of the brake pads against the rotating brake disc.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear/speed position. With manual transmission use a lower gear for greater engine braking.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Whenever the brakes are activated by CMBS™* or another system that automatically controls braking, the brake pedal is depressed and released in accordance with braking function.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■Turning on the system

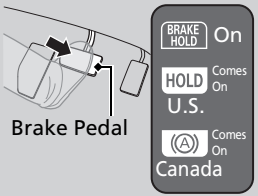


Automatic Brake Hold Button

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

■Activating the system

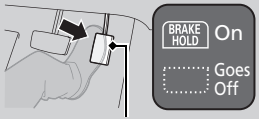


Brake Pedal

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The shift lever must not be in P or R.

- The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■Canceling the system



Accelerator Pedal

Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in a position other than P or N. The brake hold is disengaged and the vehicle starts to move.

- The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system releases the brake automatically.

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

⚠WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

■ **The system automatically cancels when:**
- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever to P or R.

■ **The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:**
- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The engine is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

■ **Turning off the automatic brake hold system**



Automatic Brake Hold Button

While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.

▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

When Stopped P. 540

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the engine is off.

Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:
- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 6 mph (10 km/h), the ABS stops.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use an incorrect tire type and size.

When the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking is not affected, there is a possibility of the ABS not operating. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle. It only helps with steering control during hard braking.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more stopping distance than a vehicle without the ABS:
- When driving on rough road surfaces, including when driving on uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- When tire chains are installed.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:
- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while vehicle is accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

Brake Assist System

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS™ is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS™ may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

➔ **CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations** P. 536

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

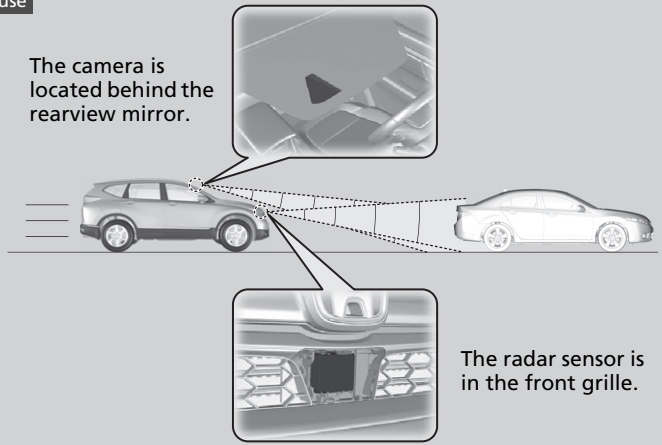
➔ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 477

Be careful not to have radar sensor cover strongly impacted.

 * Not available on all models

■ How the system works

When to use



The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 3 mph (5 km/h) and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS™ activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 3 mph (5 km/h) and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 62 mph (100 km/h) or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:

- Vehicles detected in front of you that are stationary, oncoming, or traveling in your same direction.
- A pedestrian who is detected in front of you.

- Your vehicle speed is above 62 mph (100 km/h), and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with a vehicle detected in front of you traveling in your same direction.

Continued

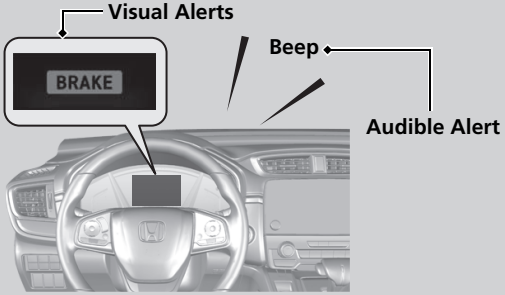
How the system works

When the CMBS™ activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be canceled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

■ When the system activates

The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



At system's earliest collision alert stage, you can change the distance (**Long**/**Normal**/**Short**) between vehicles at which alerts will come on through audio/information screen* setting options.

Customized Features P. 349

How the system works

The camera in the CMBS™ is also designed to detect pedestrians.

However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.

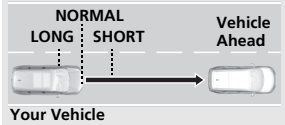
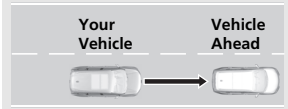
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations P. 536

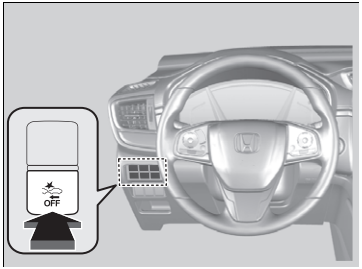
* Not available on all models

Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS™ may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS™		
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in **Long**, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Short**, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS™ determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

■ CMBS™ On and Off



Press and hold the button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS™ is off:

- The CMBS™ indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the driver information interface reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS™ is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*

The CMBS™ may automatically shut off, and the CMBS™ indicator will come and stay on under certain conditions.

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations P. 536

When the CMBS™ is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be canceled if the accelerator pedal is deeply depressed.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF), Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) system, Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) OFF, low tire pressure/TPMS, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™), and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

With Little Chance of a Collision

The CMBS™ may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.

On a curve

When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

Through a low bridge at high speed

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects [such as a traffic sign and guard rail] on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*

For the CMBS™ to work properly:

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

Do not paint, or apply any coverings or paint to radar sensor area. This can impact CMBS™ operation.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

* Not available on all models

Continued

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS™ indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS™ functions.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 477

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the front windshield.

Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast on a snowy or wet roadway).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the CMBS™ off button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- When tire chains are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

Continued

■ **Detection limitations**

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is slouching or squatting.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 3 feet (1 meter) or taller than about 7 feet (2 meter) in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands or raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

■ Automatic shutoff

CMBS™ may automatically shut itself off and the CMBS™ indicator comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected (wrong tire size, flat tire, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.

Once the conditions that caused CMBS™ to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Move the shift lever from D to P.
4. Turn off the engine.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off in about 15 seconds.

Always confirm the electric parking brake is set, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

Parking Your Vehicle

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift lever position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

When Stopped

1.5 L engine models

After shutting off the engine, you may hear certain noises coming from the vehicle. Here's the lowdown:

- Noise from Under Vehicle: This noise is caused by the vacuum pump inside the fuel evaporation leakage check module (ELCM).

Depending on conditions, the pump will come on for about 15 minutes about 5 to 10 hours after engine shutoff. This noise is just normal vehicle operation and don't indicate a vehicle problem.

When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into P before the vehicle stops completely.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient when you are backing out of a parking space.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

⚠CAUTION

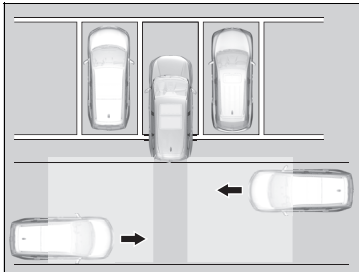
Cross Traffic Monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

 * Not available on all models

How the System Works



Radar sensors:
Underneath the rear bumper corners

The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor system is turned on.
  Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off P. 545
- The transmission is in R.
- Your vehicle is moving at 3 mph (5 km/h) or lower.

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not detect or provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Cross Traffic Monitor may not detect an approaching vehicle, or may delay alerting you under the following conditions:

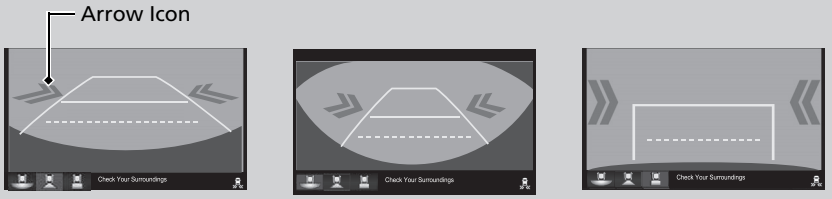
- An obstacle, such as another vehicle and a wall, near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at the speed of about 3 mph (5 km/h) or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at the speed other than between about 6 mph (10 km/h) and 16 mph (25 km/h).
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

* Not available on all models

Continued

When the System Detects a Vehicle



Normal View　Wide View　Top Down View

An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.

When the System Detects a Vehicle

If the [icon] on the lower right changes to [icon] when the transmission is in [R], mud snow or ice may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

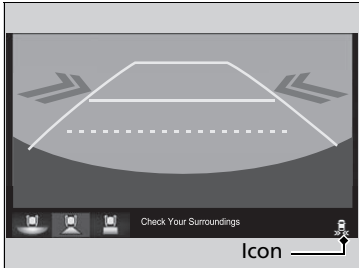
If the [icon] comes on when the transmission is in [R], there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the transmission in [R], there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system.
Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off

You can switch on and off the system using the audio/information screen.

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Camera**.
4. Select **Cross Traffic Monitor**.
5. Select **On** or **Off**, then select **OK**.

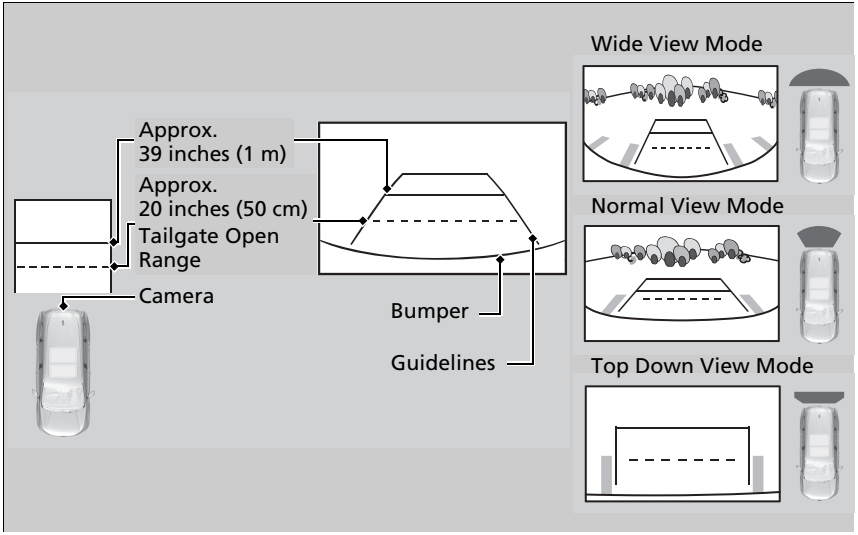


The system can also be turned on and off on the audio/information screen by pressing the CTM icon.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view.
The display automatically changes to a rear view when the shift lever is moved to R.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline*** settings.
Customized Features P. 349

Fixed Guideline
On: Guidelines appear when you shift into R.
Off: Guidelines do not appear.
Dynamic Guideline*
On: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
Off: Guidelines do not move.

 * Not available on all models

You can view three different camera angles on the rearview display.

Models with color audio system

Press the selector knob to switch the angle.

Models with Display Audio

Touch the appropriate icon to switch the angle.

 : Wide view

 : Normal view

 : Top down view

All models

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the power system, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of R, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Fuel Information

■ **Fuel recommendation**

Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 87 or higher

Use of lower octane gasoline can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

■ **Top tier detergent gasoline**

Because the level of detergency and additives in gasoline vary in the market, Honda endorses the use of "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" where available to help maintain the performance and reliability of your vehicle. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline meets a new gasoline standard jointly established by leading automotive manufacturers to meet the needs of today's advanced engines.

Qualifying gasoline retailers will, in most cases, identify their gasoline as having met "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" standards at the retail location. This fuel is guaranteed to contain the proper level of detergent additives and be free of metallic additives. The proper level of detergent additives, and absence of harmful metallic additives in gasoline, help avoid build-up of deposits in your engine and emission control system.

For further important fuel-related information for your vehicle, or on information on gasoline that does not contain MMT, visit *www.hondacars.com*. In Canada, visit *www.honda.ca* for additional information on gasoline. For more information on top tier gasoline, visit *www.toptiergas.com*.

■ **Fuel tank capacity: 14 US gal (53 L)**

Fuel Information

NOTICE

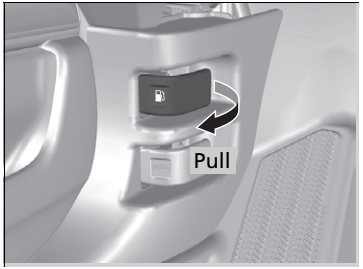
We recommend quality gasoline containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits. In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend the use of gasoline that does NOT contain harmful manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT, if such gasoline is available.

Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact a dealer for service.

Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol. If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

How to Refuel

Your fuel tank is not equipped with a fuel filler cap. You can insert the filler nozzle directly into the filler neck. The tank seals itself again when you pull out the filler nozzle.



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the lower left corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The fuel fill door opens.

How to Refuel

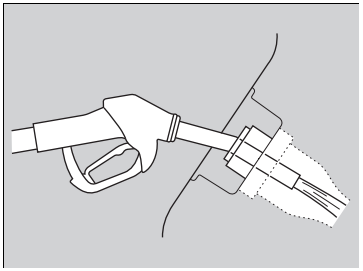
⚠WARNING

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- **Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.**
- **Handle fuel only outdoors.**
- **Wipe up spills immediately.**

The fuel filler opening is designed to accept only service station filler nozzles for refueling. Use of smaller diameter tubes (e.g., those used to siphon fuel for other uses) or other non-service station devices can damage the area in and around the filler opening.

Continued



4. Place the end of the filler nozzle on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully.
- ▶ Make sure that the end of the filler nozzle goes down along with the filler pipe.
- ▶ Keep the filler nozzle level.
- ▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically.
- ▶ After filling, wait about five seconds before removing the filler nozzle.

5. Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

How to Refuel

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

If the filler nozzle keeps turning off when the tank is not full, there may be a problem with the pump's fuel vapor recovery system. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult a dealer.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

If you have to refuel your vehicle from a portable container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.

Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container
P. 646

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO_2 emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

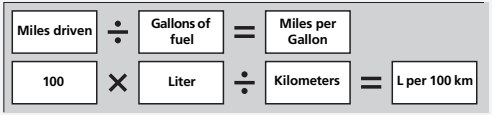
Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle in accordance with the messages displayed on the information display*/driver information interface*.

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.
  Recommended Engine Oil P. 570
- Maintain the specified tire pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess cargo.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.



In Canada, posted fuel economy numbers are established following a simulated test. For more information on how this test is performed, please visit *http://oee.nrcan.gc.ca/*

* Not available on all models

Handling Precautions

The turbocharger is a high-precision device to obtain greater horsepower by delivering a large volume of compressed air into the engine using a turbine driven by the engine's exhaust gas pressure.

- When the engine is cold just after starting, avoid revving the engine or sudden acceleration.

- Always replace the engine oil and engine oil filter according to the Maintenance Minder. The turbine rotates at very high speeds over 100,000 rpm and its temperature reaches over 1,292°F (700°C). It is lubricated and cooled by engine oil. If you fail to replace the engine oil and filter at the scheduled distance or interval, deteriorated engine oil may cause failure such as sticking and abnormal noise of the turbine bearing.

Turbo Engine Vehicle*

The scheduled maintenance intervals for replacing the filter is indicated on the information display*/ driver information interface*. Follow the information of when to replace them.

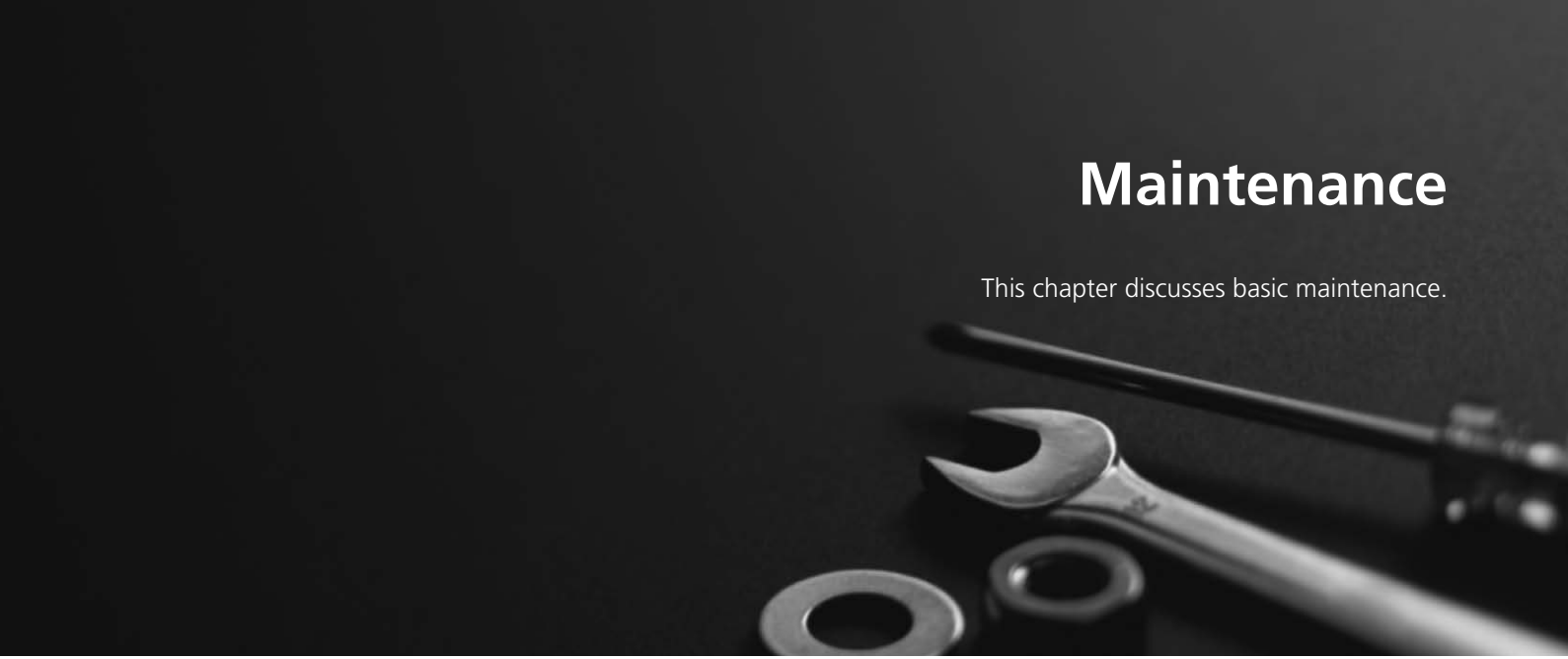
➡ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 557

The temperature gauge pointer is at the H mark when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain. This is normal. The gauge goes down after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

 * Not available on all models

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance
Inspection and Maintenance 554
Safety When Performing Maintenance...555
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service 556
Maintenance Minder™ 557
Maintenance Under the Hood
Maintenance Items Under the Hood.. 567
Opening the Hood 569
Recommended Engine Oil 570
Oil Check 571
Adding Engine Oil 573
Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter ...574
Engine Coolant 577
Transmission Fluid 581
Brake Fluid 582
Refilling Window Washer Fluid..... 583
Replacing Light Bulbs 584
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades... 591
Checking and Maintaining Tires
Checking Tires 595
Tire and Loading Information Label 596
Tire Labeling 596
DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles).. 598
Wear Indicators..... 600
Tire Service Life 600
Tire and Wheel Replacement 601
Tire Rotation 602
Winter Tires 603
Battery 604
Remote Transmitter Care
Replacing the Button Battery 606
Climate Control System Maintenance .. 608
Cleaning
Interior Care 609
Exterior Care..... 611
Accessories and Modifications..... 614

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. (Note, however, that service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect.)

■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  ➡ **Checking the Brake Fluid** P. 582
- Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 595
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 584
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 591

Inspection and Maintenance

U.S. models

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individuals using parts that are "certified" to EPA standards.

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the maintenance main items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the information display*/driver information interface*.

➡ **Maintenance Service Items** P. 559, 564

If you want to perform complex maintenance tasks that require more skills and tools, you can purchase a subscription to the Service Express website at *www.techinfo.honda.com*.

➡ **Authorized Manuals** P. 658

If you want to perform maintenance yourself, make sure that you have the necessary tools and skills first. After performing maintenance, update the records in the separate maintenance booklet.

* Not available on all models

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here.
However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the hood.
  ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations according to the schedules in this owner's manual.

⚠WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

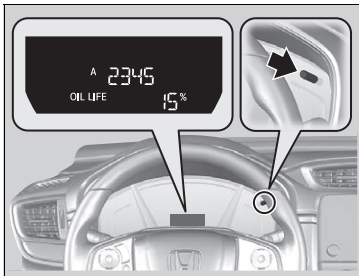
Select the Maintenance Minder to see maintenance items that are due soon and to see the percentage of life remaining in the engine oil.

When the engine oil life is less than 15%, a Maintenance Minder message will appear every time you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, reminding you to bring your vehicle to a dealer for service.

Models with information display

To Use Maintenance Minder™

Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II.
2. Press the (**TRIP**) knob repeatedly until the engine oil life appears on the information display.

The Maintenance Minder indicator ( ) stays on in the instrument panel after the engine oil life becomes **0%**. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

Based on the engine operating conditions, the remaining engine oil life is calculated and displayed as a percentage.

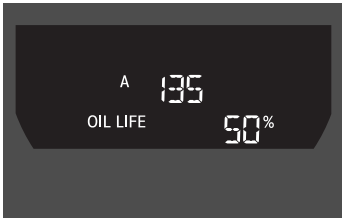
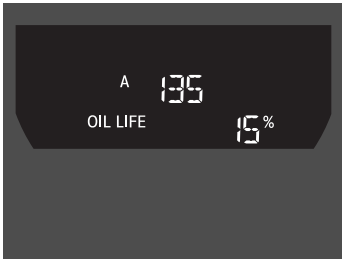
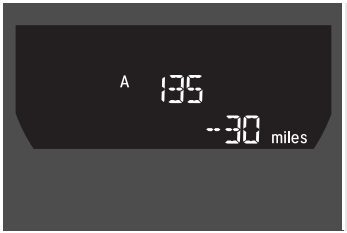
Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)	Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)
100	100 to 91
90	90 to 81
80	80 to 71
70	70 to 61
60	60 to 51
50	50 to 41
40	40 to 31
30	30 to 21
20	20 to 16
15	15 to 11
10	10 to 6
5	5 to 1
0	0

There is a list of maintenance main and sub items you can view on the information display.

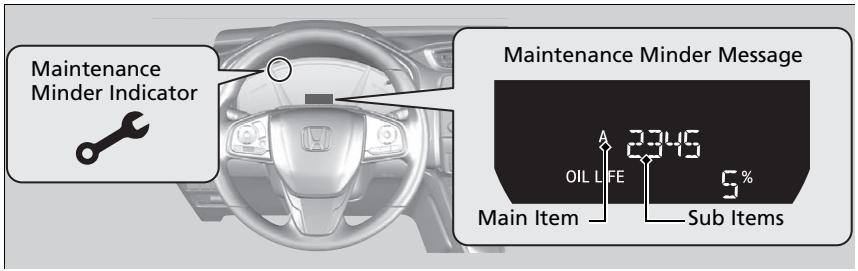
Maintenance Service Items P. 559

■ Maintenance Minder Messages on the Information Display

To switch the display, press the (**TRIP**) knob.

Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information	Maintenance Minder Indicator
	When you select the Maintenance Minder screen, it displays codes for maintenance items due at the next engine oil change, along with the percentage of engine oil life remaining.	—	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the ignition switch to ON, then goes off.
	The engine oil life indicator starts to appear along with other due-soon maintenance item codes when the remaining oil life drops to 15 percent.	The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life.	 Starts to come on when the remaining engine oil life drops to 15 percent. It goes off when the display is switched.
	The remaining engine oil has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). The negative distance on the display blinks.	The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately.	 Stays on as a reminder even when the display is switched.

Maintenance Service Items



Maintenance Service Items

- Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
- Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

U.S. models

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil*1

B	• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter
	• Inspect front and rear brakes
	• Inspect these items:
	  • Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots
	  • Suspension components
	  • Driveshaft boots
	  • Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA®)
	  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids
	  • Exhaust system#
	  • Fuel lines and connections#

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element*2 • Replace dust and pollen filter*3 • Inspect drive belt
3	• Replace transmission fluid*4
4	• Replace spark plugs • Inspect valve clearance
5	• Replace engine coolant
6	• Replace rear differential fluid
7	• Replace brake fluid*5

*1: If a Maintenance Minder indicator does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

*4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 25,000 miles (40,000 km).
*5: If a Maintenance Minder Indicator does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.

Continued

Canadian models

Maintenance Service Items

- Inspect idle speed every 256,000 km (160,000 miles).
- Adjust the valves during services A, 0, 9, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil*1
0	• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter

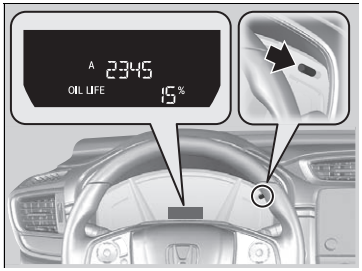
*1: If a Maintenance Minder indicator does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).
*4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 40,000 km (25,000 miles).
*5: If a Maintenance Minder Indicator does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.
: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element*2 • Replace dust and pollen filter*3 • Inspect drive belt
3	• Replace transmission fluid*4
4	• Replace spark plugs • Inspect valve clearance
5	• Replace engine coolant
6	• Replace rear differential fluid
7	• Replace brake fluid*5

9	• Inspect front and rear brakes
	• Inspect these items:
	  • Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots
	  • Suspension components
	  • Driveshaft boots
	  • Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA®)
	  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids
	  • Exhaust system#
	  • Fuel lines and connections#

■ Resetting the Display

Reset the Maintenance Minder display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II and have the vehicle at a complete stop.
2. Display the Maintenance Minder by repeatedly pressing the (**TRIP**) knob.
3. Press and hold the knob for 10 seconds or more.
   ▶ The display will blink to show it is in reset mode.
4. Rotate the knob to select the item you wish to reset.
   ▶ Reset the selected item by pushing the knob for five seconds or more.

Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the Maintenance Minder™ display yourself.

Models with driver information interface

To Use Maintenance Minder™

■ Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

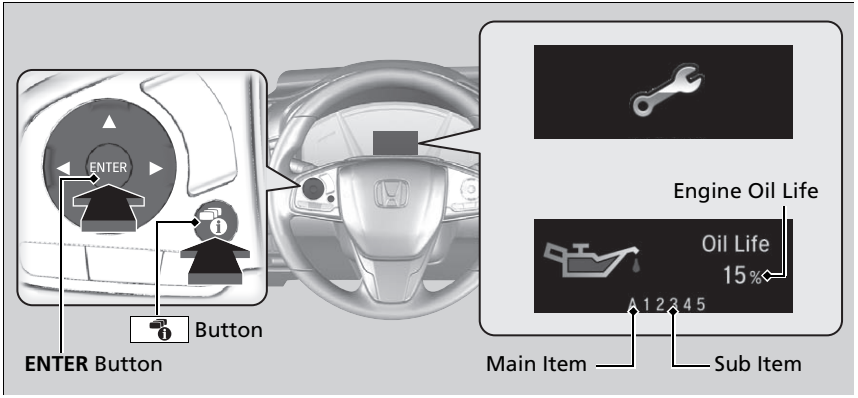
Certain maintenance items due soon, along with the estimated remaining oil life, appear on the driver information interface.

You can view them on the Maintenance Minder screen at any time.

1. Set the power mode to ON.

2. Press the button several times until is displayed.

3. Press **ENTER** to go to the Maintenance Minder screen. The engine oil life appears on the driver information interface along with maintenance items due soon.



Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

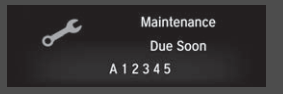
Based on the engine operating conditions, the remaining engine oil life is calculated and displayed as a percentage.

Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)	Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)
100	100 to 91
90	90 to 81
80	80 to 71
70	70 to 61
60	60 to 51
50	50 to 41
40	40 to 31
30	30 to 21
20	20 to 16
15	15 to 11
10	10 to 6
5	5 to 1
0	0

There is a list of maintenance main and sub items you can view on the driver information interface.

Maintenance Service Items P. 564

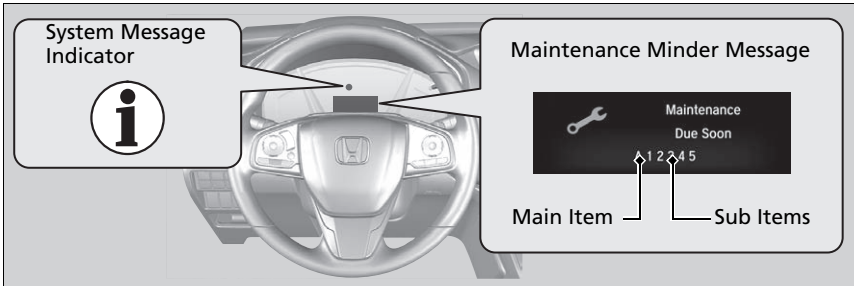
Maintenance Minder Messages on the Driver Information Interface

Maintenance Message	Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information
—		When you select the Maintenance Minder screen, it displays codes for maintenance items due at the next engine oil change, along with the percentage of engine oil life remaining.	—
Maintenance Due Soon 		The engine oil life indicator starts to appear along with other due-soon maintenance item codes when the remaining oil life drops to 15 percent.	The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life.
Maintenance Due Now 		The remaining engine oil life is 5 to 1 percent. Press the [i] button to switch to another display.	The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.
Maintenance Past Due 		The engine oil has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). The negative distance on the display blinks.	The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately.

The system message indicator (ⓘ) comes on along with the Maintenance Minder message.

Continued

Maintenance Service Items



Maintenance Service Items

- Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
- Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

U.S. models

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil*1

B	• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter
	• Inspect front and rear brakes
	• Inspect these items:
	  • Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots
	  • Suspension components
	  • Driveshaft boots
	  • Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA®)
	  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids
	  • Exhaust system#
	  • Fuel lines and connections#

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element*2 • Replace dust and pollen filter*3 • Inspect drive belt
3	• Replace transmission fluid*4
4	• Replace spark plugs • Inspect valve clearance
5	• Replace engine coolant
6	• Replace rear differential fluid
7	• Replace brake fluid*5

*1: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

*4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 25,000 miles (40,000 km).
*5: If a Maintenance Minder Indicator does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.

Canadian models

Maintenance Service Items

- Inspect idle speed every 256,000 km (160,000 miles).
- Adjust the valves during services A, 0, 9, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil*1
0	• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter

*1: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).
*4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 40,000 km (25,000 miles).
*5: If a Maintenance Minder Indicator does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.
: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

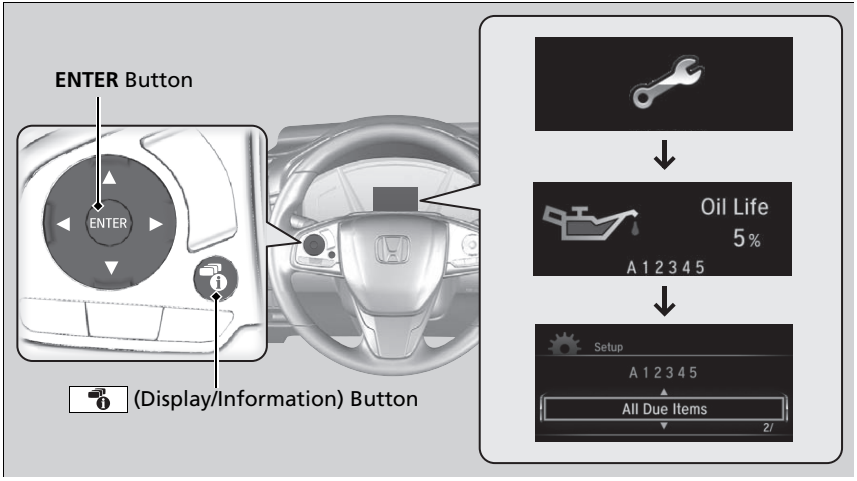
CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element*2 • Replace dust and pollen filter*3 • Inspect drive belt
3	• Replace transmission fluid*4
4	• Replace spark plugs • Inspect valve clearance
5	• Replace engine coolant
6	• Replace rear differential fluid
7	• Replace brake fluid*5

9	• Inspect front and rear brakes
	• Inspect these items:
	  • Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots
	  • Suspension components
	  • Driveshaft boots
	  • Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA®)
	  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids
	  • Exhaust system#
	  • Fuel lines and connections#

Continued

■ Resetting the Display

Reset the Maintenance Minder display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the (display/information) button repeatedly until the appears.
3. Press the **ENTER** button.
4. Press and hold the **ENTER** button for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
5. Press ▲ / ▼ to select a maintenance item to reset, or to select **All Due Items** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
6. Press the **ENTER** button to reset the selected item.
7. Repeat from step 4 for other items you wish to reset.

Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

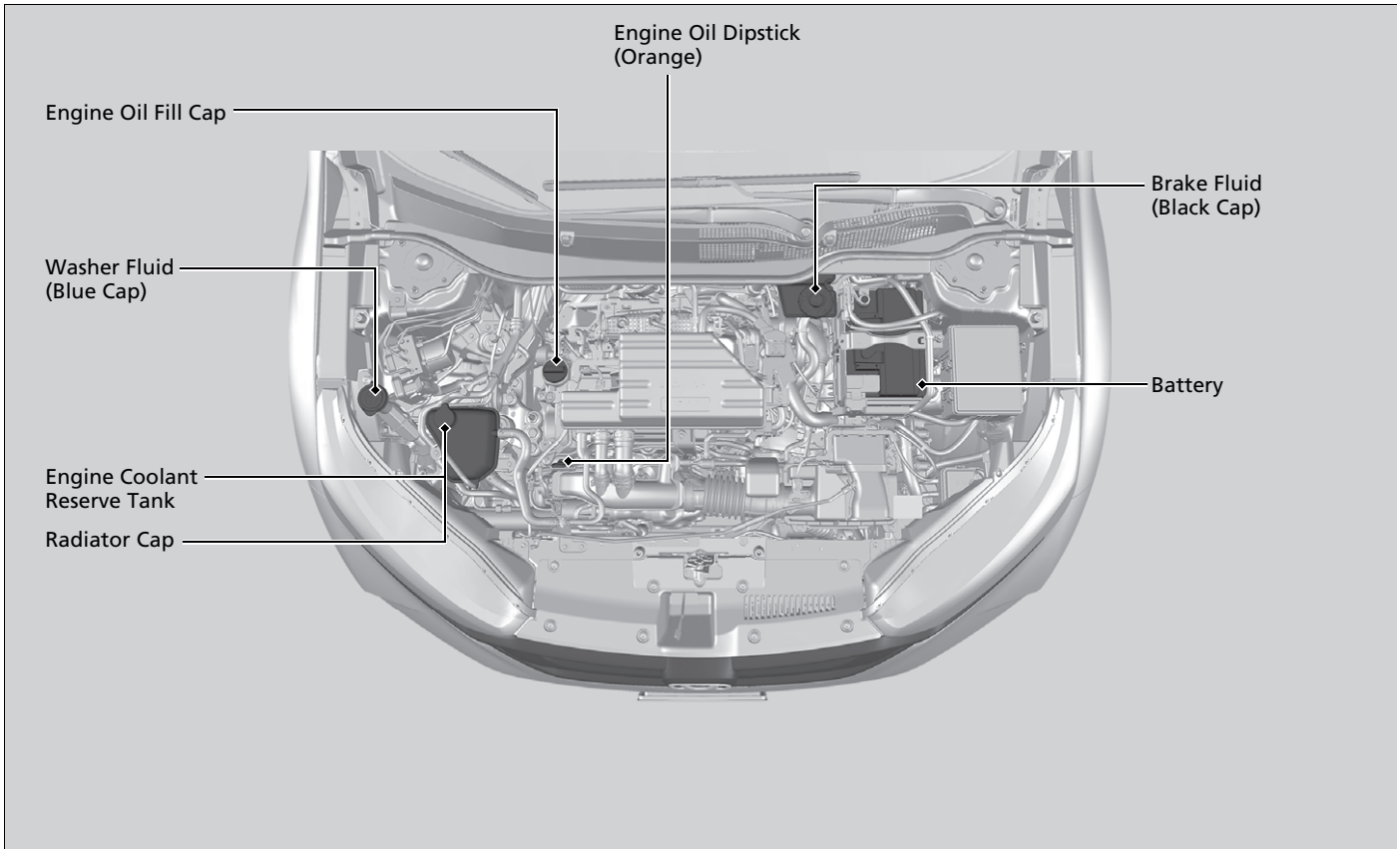
The dealer will reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the Maintenance Minder™ display yourself.

You can also reset the Maintenance Minder™ display using the audio/information screen.

How to customize P. 356

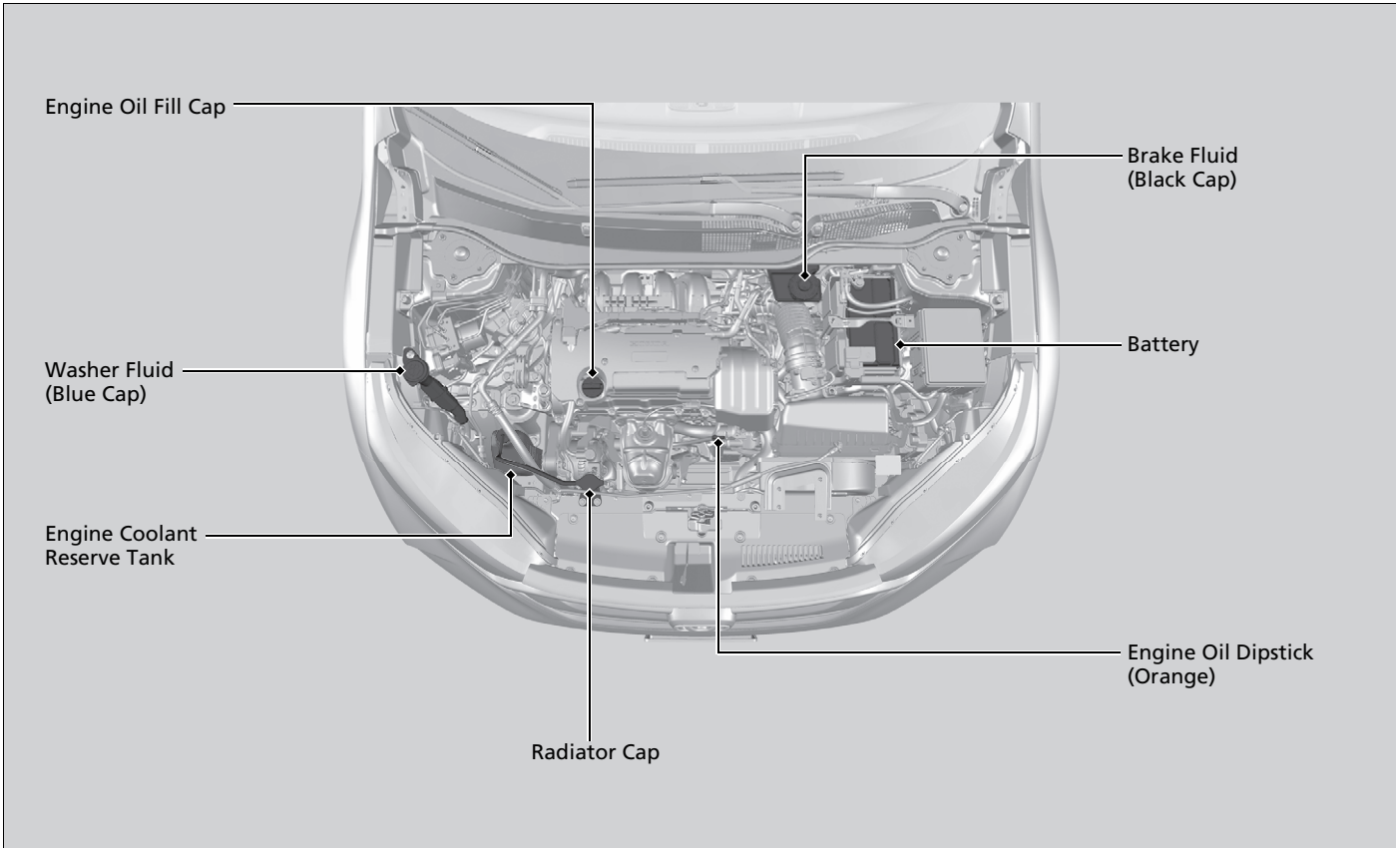
Maintenance Items Under the Hood

1.5 L engine models

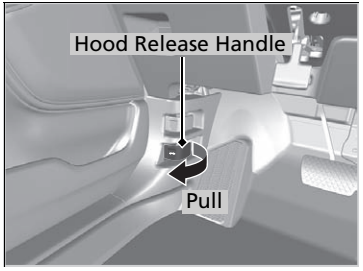


Continued

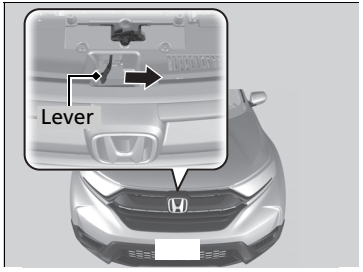
2.4 L engine models



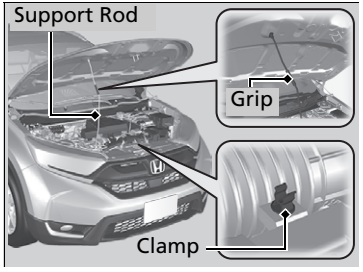
Opening the Hood



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the hood release handle under the lower left corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The hood will pop up slightly.



3. Push the hood latch lever (located under the front edge of the hood to the center) to the side and raise the hood. Once you have raised the hood slightly, you can release the lever.



4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the hood.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the hood. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 12 inches (30 cm) and let the hood close.

Opening the Hood

⚠WARNING

The hood support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine.
To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod:
Use the foam grip instead.

NOTICE

Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised. The hood will strike the wipers, resulting in damage to the hood and/or the wipers.

When closing the hood, check that the hood is securely latched.

If the hood latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

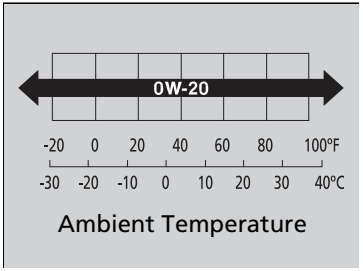
Recommended Engine Oil

- **Genuine Honda Motor Oil**
- **Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil with an API Certification Seal on the container.**



Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.



Use a Genuine Honda Motor Oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.

■ Synthetic oil

You may also use synthetic motor oil if it is labeled with the API Certification Seal and is the specified viscosity grade.

Recommended Engine Oil

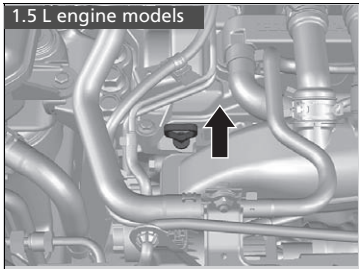
Engine Oil Additives

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

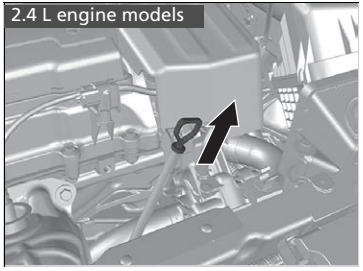
Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.
Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.

1.5 L engine models



2.4 L engine models



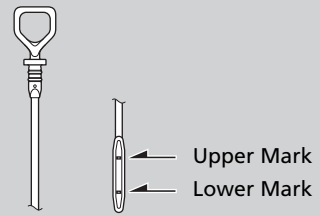
1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

Oil Check

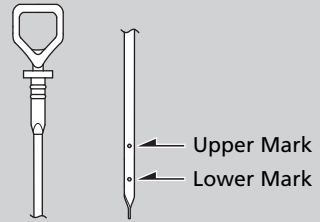
If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Continued

1.5 L engine models



2.4 L engine models

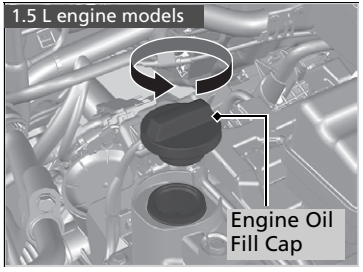


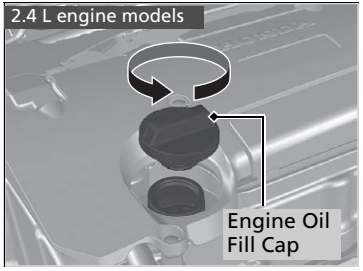
4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

Oil Check

Under certain driving conditions, it is normal for the engine oil level to rise above the upper mark. If you have a concern, consult a dealer for details.

Adding Engine Oil





1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

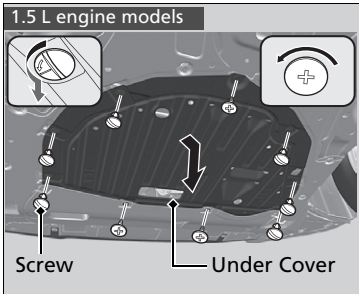
NOTICE

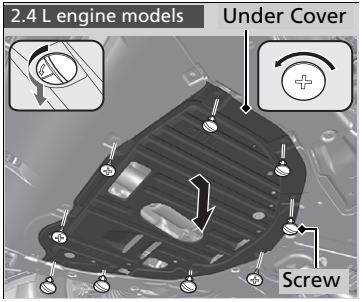
Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You must change the engine oil and oil filter regularly in order to maintain the engine's lubrication. The engine may be damaged if they are not changed regularly. Specialized equipment and procedures are required to change the engine oil and oil filter. Have an authorized Honda dealer replace them.
Do not attempt to change the engine oil and oil filter yourself.

Change the oil and filter in accordance with the maintenance message on the information display*/driver information interface*.





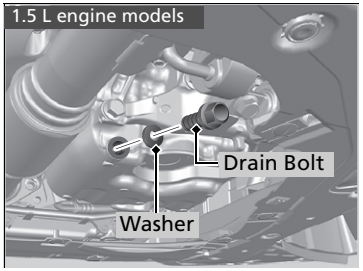
1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, and then turn the engine off.
2. Open the hood and remove the engine oil fill cap.
3. Remove the phillips head screws and slotted head screws by turning 90° counterclockwise on the undercarriage and remove the under cover.

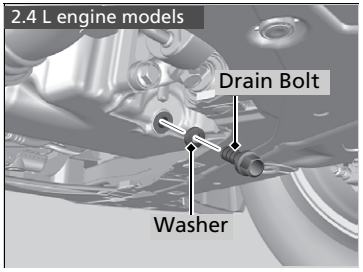
Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

NOTICE

You may damage the environment if you do not dispose of the oil in a suitable way. If you are changing the oil by yourself, appropriately dispose of the used oil. Put the oil in a sealed container and take it to a recycling center. Do not throw the oil away into a garbage can or onto the ground.

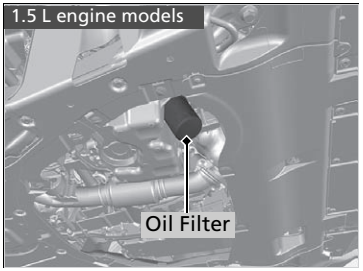
* Not available on all models

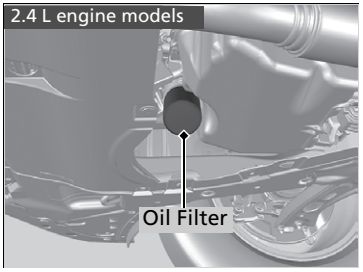




4. Remove the drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine, and drain the oil into a suitable container.

Continued





5. Remove the oil filter and dispose of the remaining oil.
6. Check that the filter gasket is not stuck to the engine contact surface.
▶ If it is stuck, you must detach it.
7. Wipe away dirt and dust adhering to the contact surface of the engine block, and install a new oil filter.
▶ Apply a light coat of new engine oil to the oil filter gasket.
8. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt.
▶ Tightening torque:
30 lbf·ft (40 N·m, 4.0 kgf·m)
9. Pour the recommended engine oil into the engine.
▶ Engine oil change capacity (including filter):

1.5 L engine models

3.7 US qt (3.5 L)

2.4 L engine models

4.7 US qt (4.4 L)

10. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap securely and start the engine.
11. Run the engine for a few minutes, and then check that there is no leak from the drain bolt or oil filter.
12. Stop the engine, wait for three minutes, and then check the oil level on the dipstick.
▶ If necessary, add more engine oil.
13. Reinstall the under cover in the same order it was removed.

Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You will need a special wrench to replace the oil filter. You can buy this wrench from a dealer.

When installing the new oil filter, follow the instructions supplied with the oil filter.

Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The low oil pressure indicator should go off within five seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine, and check your work.

Be sure to verify that the oil filter is designed for your vehicle. A genuine Honda oil filter is recommended for optimum lubrication flow and filtration properties to assure the reliability of the engine.

1.5 L engine models

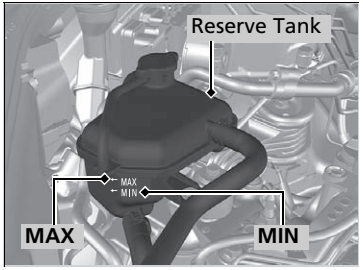
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

■ Checking the Coolant



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

⚠WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

NOTICE

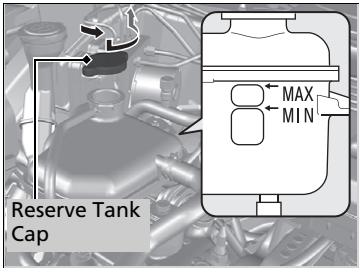
Genuine Honda engine coolant is a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water that can withstand freezing at temperatures as low as about -31°F (-35°C). If your vehicle is consistently subjected to temperatures below this, the concentration of antifreeze in the coolant should be increased. Consult a dealer for details.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Continued

■ Adding the Coolant



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Turn the reserve tank cap 1/8 turn counterclockwise and relieve any pressure in the coolant system.
3. Push down and turn the reserve tank cap counter-clockwise to remove it.
4. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
5. Put the reserve tank cap back on, and tighten it fully.

Adding the Coolant

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.